

B.

A N

A C C O U N T

O F

L O U I S I A N A,

EXHIBITING

A COMPENDIOUS SKETCH

OF ITS

POLITICAL AND NATURAL HISTORY

AND TOPOGRAPHY,

WITH A

COPIOUS APPENDIX

CONTAINING

SEVERAL IMPORTANT DOCUMENTS.

Le Page du Prêtre

NEWBERN: *S.C.*

FRANKLIN & GARROW.

1804.

E. M.

F 372
L 57
Office

F 372
L 57
Office

THESE sheets contain a com-
pendious account of the political and
natural history, as well as the topo-
graphy of Louisiana.

The greater part of it is extracted
from the most valuable work of the
kind, written in 1759, by Dupratz,
and the compiler of this has sought
information, in regard to posterior
transactions, in the writings of the
Abbe Raynal, and the American
gazettes.

He has added copies of the treaty
of cession to the United States, the
documents lately laid by the Execu-
tive before Congress, and other im-
portant papers.

N.C.
Newbern, March 15, 1804.

(1) Francois Xavier Martens
afterwards Chief Justice of La.

1. The first part of the document is a letter from the Secretary of the State to the President, dated 18th March 1847. It contains a report on the progress of the negotiations for the purchase of the Texas territory, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

2. The second part of the document is a letter from the President to the Secretary of the State, dated 20th March 1847. It contains a reply to the letter of the Secretary, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

3. The third part of the document is a letter from the Secretary of the State to the President, dated 22nd March 1847. It contains a report on the progress of the negotiations for the purchase of the Texas territory, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

4. The fourth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Secretary of the State, dated 24th March 1847. It contains a reply to the letter of the Secretary, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

5. The fifth part of the document is a letter from the Secretary of the State to the President, dated 26th March 1847. It contains a report on the progress of the negotiations for the purchase of the Texas territory, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

6. The sixth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Secretary of the State, dated 28th March 1847. It contains a reply to the letter of the Secretary, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

7. The seventh part of the document is a letter from the Secretary of the State to the President, dated 30th March 1847. It contains a report on the progress of the negotiations for the purchase of the Texas territory, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

8. The eighth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Secretary of the State, dated 31st March 1847. It contains a reply to the letter of the Secretary, and mentions the fact that the President has agreed to purchase the territory for the sum of \$10,000,000.

AN ACCOUNT
OF
LOUISIANA.

PART I.
Political History.

THE Spanish and the French are the only European nations who ever made any settlement on the northern coast of the gulf of Mexico.

Don Juan Ponce de Leon discovered it in 1512. Don Lucas Vázquez de Aillon, who landed on it in 1520, was hospitably received by the natives, who made him presents in gold, pearls and plated silver; induced by this friendly treatment he returned thither in 1524, but the Indians, he this time met with, manifested quite contrary sentiments, they fell on him, killed two hundred of his men and obliged him to retreat.

In 1528 Don Pampilo Nefunez landed also on that coast, receiving from the first nations he met in his way, presents

made in gold; which by signs, they gave him to understand, came from the Apalachian mountains, in the country which at this day goes under the name of Florida: And thither he attempted to go, undertaking a hazardous journey of twenty five days. In this march he was so often attacked by the new people he continually discovered, and lost so many of his men, as only to think of re-embarking with the few that were left, happy to have himself escaped the dangers, to which his imprudence had exposed him.

The account we have of the expedition of Don Dominico Soto, who in 1539 landed in the Bay of St. Esprit, is so romantic, and so constantly contradicted by all who have travelled that country, that far from giving credit to it, we ought rather to suppose his enterprise had no success; as no traces of it have remained, any more than of those that went before.

Monsieur Rene de Laudonniere was sent thither in 1564 by Admiral Coligni. He built Fort Caroline, the ruins of which it is said, are still to be seen, above Pen-façola, though De Laet is of opinion that it was erected at the place now called St.

h by signs, they gave
came from the Apala-
n the country which
der the name of Flori-
attempted to go, un-
us journey of twenty
march he was so often
w people he continu-
d lost so many of his
ink of re-embarking
at were left, happy
escaped the dangers,
rudence had exposed

have of the expedition
Soto, who in 1539
of St. Esprit, is so ro-
stantly contradicted
velled that country,
credit to it, we ought
his enterprize had no
es of it have remained,
hose that went before.
de Laudonniere was
t by Admiral Coligni.
ine, the ruins of which
o be seen, above Pen-
Laet is of opinion that
e place now called St.

Augustine. Those he left after him, on
his return to France soon after, fell vic-
tims to their unprotected situation. The
Spaniards some time after attacked them,
and forcing them to capitulate, cruelly
murdered them, without any regard had
to the treaty concluded between them.
As France was at that time involved in
the calamities of a religious war, this act
of barbarity had remained unresented,
had not a single man of Mont Marson,
named Dominique de Gourgues, attempt-
ed, in the name of the nation, to take
vengeance of it. In 1567, having fi-
ted out a vessel and sailed for Florida,
he took three Forts built by the Spaniards;
and after killing many of them in the se-
veral attacks he made, hanged the rest:
And having settled there a new post, re-
turned to France. But the disorders of
the State having prevented the maintain-
ing that post; the Spaniards soon after
retook possession of the country.

From that time the French seemed to
have dropped all thoughts of that coast,
or of attempting any discoveries therein;
when the wars in Canada with the natives,
afforded them the knowledge of the vast
country they are possessed of at this day.

In one of these wars a Recollet, or Franciscan Friar, named F. Hennepin, was taken and carried to the Illinois. As he had some skill in surgery, he proved serviceable to that people, and was also kindly treated by them : And being at full liberty, he travelled over the country, following for a considerable time the banks of the river St. Louis, or Mississippi, without being able to proceed to its mouth. However he failed not to take possession of that country in the name of Louis XIV, calling it Louisiana. Providence having facilitated his return to Canada, he gave the most advantageous account of all he had seen (and after his return to France) drew up a relation of it, dedicated to M. Colbert.

The account he gave of Louisiana failed not to produce its good effects. M. de la Salle, equally famous for his misfortunes and his courage, undertook to traverse these unknown countries quite to the sea. In Jan. 1679 he set out from Quebec with a large detachment, and being come among the Illinois, there built the first fort France ever had in that country, calling it Crevecoeur ; and there he left a good garrison under the command of the Chevalier de Tonti. From thence

ers a Recollet, or Fran-
 d F. Hennepin, was ta-
 the Illinois. As he had
 ry, he proved servicea-
 and was also kindly
 And being at full liber-
 er the country, follow-
 ole time the banks of
 or Mississippi, without
 ed to its mouth. How-
 o take possession of that
 ne of Louis XIV, cal-
 Providence having fa-
 to Canada, he gave the
 account of all he had
 turn to France) drew up
 icated to M. Colbert.
 gave of Louisiana fail-
 its good effects. M.
 famous for his mis-
 ourage, undertook to
 nown countries quite
 . 1679 he set out from
 rge detachment, and
 g the Illinois, there
 France ever had in that
 Crevecoeur; and there
 on under the command
 Tonti. From thence

he went down the river St. Louis, quite
 to its mouth; which, as has been said,
 is in the gulf of Mexico: And having
 made observations, and taken the eleva-
 tion in the best manner he could, return-
 ed by the same way to Quebec, from
 whence he passed over to France.

After giving the particulars of his jour-
 ney to M. Colbert, that great Minister,
 who knew of what importance it was to
 the State, to make sure of so fine and ex-
 tensive a country, scrupled not to allow
 him a ship and a small frigate, in order
 to find out, by the way of the gulf of
 Mexico, the mouth of the river St. Louis.
 He set sail in 1685: But his observations,
 doubtless, not having had all the justness
 requisite, after arriving in the gulf he
 got beyond the river, and running too
 far westward, entered the Bay of St Ber-
 nard: And some misunderstanding hap-
 pening between him and the officers of
 the vessels, he debarqued with the men
 under his command, and having settled a
 post in that place, undertook to go by land
 in quest of the great river. But after a
 march of several days, some of his peo-
 ple, irritated on account of the fatigue
 he exposed them to, availing themselves

of an opportunity, when separated from the rest of his men, basely assassinated him. The soldiers, tho' deprived of their Commander, still continued their route, and, after crossing many rivers, arrived at length at the Arkansas, where they unexpectedly found a French post lately settled. The Chevalier de Tonti was gone down from the fort of the Illinois, quite to the mouth of the river, about the time he judged M. de la Salle might have arrived by sea : And not finding him, was gone up again, in order to return to his post. And in his way entering the river of the Arkansas, quite to the village of that nation, with whom he made an alliance, some of his people insisted they might be allowed to settle there ; which was agreed to, he leaving ten of them in that place : And this small cantonment maintained its ground, not only because from time to time encreased by some Canadians, who came down this river ; but above all because those who formed it, had the prudent precaution to live in peace with the natives, and treat, as legitimate, the children they had by the daughters of the Arkansas, with whom they matched out of necessity.

when separated from
n, safely assassinated
tho' deprived of their
continued their route,
many rivers, arrived
Arkansas, where they
d a French post lately
evalier de Tonti was
the fort of the Illinois,
n of the river, about
M. de la Salle might
: And not finding him,
, in order to return to
his way entering the
nfas, quite to the vil-
with whom he made
his people insisted they
to settle there; which
leaving ten of them in
this small cantonment
und, not only because
encreased by some Ca-
down this river; but
ose who formed it, had
ution to live in peace
and treat, as legitimate,
ad by the daughters of
n whom they matched

The report of the pleasantness of Louis-
siana spreading through Canada, many
Frenchmen of that country repaired to
settle there, dispersing themselves at plea-
sure along the river St. Louis, especially
towards its mouth, and even in some is-
lands on the coast, and on the river Mo-
bile, which lies nearer Canada. The
facility of the commerce with St. Domin-
go was, undoubtedly, what invited them
to the neighbourhood of the sea, though
the interior parts of the country be in all
respects far preferable. However, these
scattered settlements, incapable to main-
tain their ground of themselves, and too
distant to be able to afford mutual assist-
ance, neither warranted the possession of
this country, nor could they be called a
taking of possession. Louisiana remained
in this neglected state, till M. d' Hiberville,
Chef d' Escadre, having discovered, in
1698, the mouths of the river St. Louis,
and being nominated Governor General
of that vast country carried thither the
first colony in 1699. As he was a na-
tive of Canada, the colony almost entire-
ly consisted of Canadians, among whom
M. de Luchereau, uncle of Madam d'
Hiberville, particularly distinguished him-
self,

The settlement was made on the river Mobile, with all the facility that could be wished; but its progress proved slow: For these first inhabitants had no other advantage above the natives, as to the necessities of life, than what their own industry, joined to some rude tools, to give the plainest forms to timbers, afforded them.

The war, which Louis XIV. had at that time to maintain, and the pressing necessities of the state, continually engrossed the attention of the ministry nor allowed them time to think of Louisiana. What was then thought most adviseable, was to make a grant of it to some rich person; who, finding it his interest to improve that country, would at the same time that he promoted his own interest, promote that of the state. Louisiana was thus ceded to M. Crozat. And it is to be presumed, had M. d' Hiberville lived longer, the colony would have made considerable progress: But that illustrious sea-officer, whose authority was considerable, dying at the Havannah, in 1701; after which this settlement was deserted; a long time must intervene before a new Governor could arrive from France. The

was made on the river the facility that could progress proved slow: habitants had no other than what their own income rude tools, to give to timbers, afforded

ch Louis XIV. had at tain, and the pressing ate, continually engros- of the ministry nor al- to think of Louisiana. thought most adviseable, rant of it to some rich ding it his interest to ntry, would at the same moted his own interest, the state. Louisiana was Crozat. And it is to be . d' Hiberville lived lon- would have made confi- But that illustrious fea- thority was considerable, vannah, in 1701; after ement was deserted; a intervene before a new arrive from France. The

person pitched upon to fill that post, was M. de la Motte Cadillac, who arrived in that country in June 1713.

The colony had but a scanty measure of commodities, and money scarcer yet: It was rather in a state of langour, than of vigorous activity, in one of the finest countries in the world; because impossible for it to do the laborious works, and make the first advances, always requisite in the best lands.

The Spaniards, for a long time, considered Louisiana as a property justly theirs, because it constitutes the greatest part of Florida, which they first discovered. The pains the French were at then to settle there, roused their jealousy, to form the design of cramping them, by settling at the Assinai, a nation not very distant from the Natchitoches, whither some Frenchmen had penetrated. There the Spaniards met with no small difficulty to form that settlement, and being at a loss how to accomplish it, one F. Ydalgo, a Franciscan Friar, took it in his head to write to the French, to beg their assistance in settling a mission among the Assinai. He sent three different copies of his letter hap-hazard three different ways, hop-

ing one of them at least, might fall into the hands of the French.

Nor was he disappointed in his hope ; one of them, from one post to another and from hand to hand, falling into the hands of M. de la Motte. That General, incessantly taken up with the concerns of the colony, and the means of relieving it, was not apprized of the design of the Spaniards in that letter ; he could only see therein a sure and short method to remedy the present evils, by favouring the Spaniards, and making a treaty of commerce with them, which might procure to the colony what it was in want of, and what the Spaniards abounded with namely, horses, cattle, and money : He therefore communicated that letter to M. de St. Denis, to whom he proposed to undertake a journey by land to Mexico.

M. de St. Denis, for the fourteen years he was in Louisiana, had made several excursions up and down the country ; and having a general knowledge of all the languages of the different nations which inhabit it, gained the love and esteem of these people, so far as to be acknowledged their Grand Chief. This Gentleman, in other respects a man of courage, pru-

at least, might fall into French.

Appointed in his hope ; from one post to another hand, falling into the Motte. That General, up with the concerns and the means of relieving the design of the letter ; he could only see a short method to remedy by favouring the Spaniards a treaty of commerce which might procure to the Spaniards as in want of, and what was bounded with namely, and money : He therefore that letter to M. de St. Denis proposed to undertake to Mexico.

Spain, for the fourteen years past, had made several excursions down the country ; and had knowledge of all the different nations which dwelt there, and the love and esteem of the Spaniards to be acknowledged chief. This Gentleman, a man of courage, pru-

dence, and resolution, was then the fittest person M. de la Motte could have pitched upon, to put his design in execution.

How fatiguing soever the enterprize was, M. de St. Denis undertook it with pleasure, and set out with twenty-five men. This small company would have made some figure, had it continued entire ; but some of them dropped M. de St. Denis by the way, and many of them remained among the Natchitoches, to whose country he was come. He was therefore obliged to set out from that place, accompanied only by ten men, with whom he traversed upwards of an hundred and fifty leagues in a country entirely depopulated, having on his route met with no nation, till he came to the Presidio, or fortrefs of St. John Baptist, on the Rio (river) del Norte, in New Mexico.

The Governor of this fort was Don Diego Raymond, an officer advanced in years, who favourably received M. de St. Denis, on acquainting him, that the motive to his journey was F. Ydalgo's letter, and that he had orders to repair to Mexico. But as the Spaniards do not

readily allow strangers to travel through the countries of their dominion in America, for fear the view of these fine countries should inspire notions, the consequences of which might be greatly prejudicial to them, D. Diego did not chuse to permit M. de St. Denis to continue his route, without the previous consent of the Viceroy. It was therefore necessary to dispatch a courier to Mexico, and to wait his return.

The courier, impatiently longed for, arrived at length, with the permission granted by the Duke of Linarez, Viceroy of Mexico. Upon which M. de St. Denis set out directly, and arrived at Mexico June 5, 1715. The Viceroy had naturally an affection to France; M. de St. Denis was therefore favourably received, saving some precautions, which the Duke thought proper to take, not to give any disgust to some officers of justice who were about him.

The affair was soon dispatched; the Duke of Linarez having promised to make a treaty of commerce, as soon as the Spaniards should be settled at the Affiniais; which M. de St. Denis undertook to do, upon his return to Louisiana.

angers to travel through
their dominion in Ameri-
view of these fine coun-
tre notions, the conse-
quence might be greatly preju-
dicial. Diego did not chuse
St Denis to continue
at the previous consent
It was therefore neces-
sary to send a courier to Mexico, and

he impatiently longed for,
with the permission
Duke of Linarez, Vice-
Upon which M. de St.
directly, and arrived at
St. Louis, 1715. The Viceroy
an affection to France;
he was therefore favoura-
ble, saving some precautions,
he thought proper to take,
disgust to some officers of
the court about him.

was soon dispatched; the
king having promised to make
commerce, as soon as the
post should be settled at the Affiniais;
St. Denis undertook to do,
to Louisiana.

M. de St. Denis soon returned to the
fort of St. John Baptist; after which
he resolved to form the Caravan, which
was to be settled at the Affiniais; at whose
head M. de St. Denis put himself, and
happily conducted it to the place appoint-
ed. And then having, in quality of Grand
Chief, assembled the nation of the Affi-
nais, he exhorted them to receive and
use the Spaniards well. The veneration,
which that people had for him, made
them submit to his will in all things;
and thus the promise he had made to the
Duke of Linarez was faithfully fulfilled.

The Affiniais are fifty leagues distant
from the Naetchitoches. The Spaniards,
finding themselves still at a great dis-
tance, the French availed themselves of that
first settlement, in order to form a second
among the Adaies; a nation which is
ten leagues from the post of the Naet-
chitoches; whereby they confine them on
the west within the neighbourhood of
the river St. Louis: And from that time
it was not their fault, that they had not
cramped them to the North: As I shall
mention in its place.

To this anecdote of their history I shall,
in a word or two, add that of their set-
tle-

tlement at Pensacola, on the coast of Florida, three months after M. d'Hiberville had carried the first inhabitants to Louisiana, that country having continued to be inhabited by Europeans, ever since the garrison left there by Dominique de Gourgès; which either perished or deserted, for want of being supported.

To return to M. de la Motte and M. St. Denis: The former, ever attentive to the project of having a treaty of commerce concluded with the Spaniards, and pleased with the success of M. de St. Denis's journey to Mexico, proposed his return thither again, not doubting but the Duke of Linarez would be as good as his word, as the French had already been. M. de St. Denis, ever ready to obey, accepted the commission of his General. But this journey was not to be undertaken as the first; it was proper to carry some goods, in order to execute that treaty, as soon as it should be concluded and to indemnify himself for the expences he was to be at. Though the store-houses of M. Crozat were full, it was no easy matter to get goods. The factors refused to give any on credit: nay, refused M. de la Motte's security;

ola, on the coast of
this after M. d'Hiber-
the first inhabitants to
country having conti-
ed by Europeans, ever
ft there by Dominique
ich either perished or
of being supported.
de la Motte and M.
former, ever attentive
aving a treaty of com-
with the Spaniards, and
succes of M. de St.
o Mexico, proposed his
in, not doubting but the
would be as good as his
ench had already been.
ever ready to obey,
mission of his General.
was not to be underta-
it was proper to car-
n order to execute that
s it should be conclud-
nify himself for the ex-
to be at. Though the
M. Crozat were full, it
tter to get goods. The
to give any on credit :
de la Motte's security;

and there was no money to be had to pay them. The Governor was therefore obliged to form a company of the most responsible men of the colony : And to this company only the factors determined to advance the goods. This expedient was far from being agreeable to M. de St. Denis, who opened his mind to M. de la Motte on that head, and told him, that some or all of his partners would accompany the goods they had engaged to be security for: and that, although it was absolutely necessary the effects should appear to be his property alone, they would not fail to discover, they themselves were the proprietors; which would be sufficient to cause their confiscation; the commerce between the two nations not being open. M. de la Motte saw the solidity of these reasons; but the impossibility of acting otherwise, constrained him to supercede them : And, as M. de St. Denis had foreseen, it accordingly happened.

He set out from Mobile, August 13, 1716, escorted, as he all long apprehended, by some of those concerned; and being come to the Affinai, he there passed the winter. On the 19th of March,

the year following, setting out on journey, he soon arrived at the Presidio of St. John Baptist. M. de St. Denis declared these goods to be his own property, in order to obviate their confiscation, which was otherwise unavoidable; and wanted to shew some acts of bounty and generosity, in order to gain the friendship of the Spaniards. But the untractableness, the avarice, and indiscretion of the parties concerned, broke through all his measures: and to prevent the entire disconcerting of them, he hastened his departure for Mexico, where he arrived May 14, 1717. The Duke of Linarez was yet there, but sick, and on his death-bed. M. de St. Denis had, however, time to see him, who knew him again: And that Nobleman took care to have him recommended to the Vicetoy his successor; namely, the Marquis of Balero, a man as much against the French, as the Duke was for them.

M. de St. Denis did not long solicit the Marquis of Balero for concluding the treaty of commerce; he soon had other business to mind. F. Olivarez, who, on the representation of F. Ydalgo, as a person of a jealous, turbulent, and dangerous disposition, had been excluded from

, setting out on
 arrived at the Presidio
 M. de St. Denis de-
 o be his own proper-
 ate their confiscation,
 ife unavoidable; and
 e acts of bounty and
 to gain the friend-
 s. But the untracta-
 , and indiscretion of
 ed, broke through all
 to prevent the entire
 m, he hastened his de-
 where he arrived May
 uke of Linarez was
 and on his death-bed.
 ad, however, time to
 him again: And that
 e to have him recom-
 mended his successor;
 is of Balero, a man as
 ench, as the Duke was

did not long solicit
 ero for concluding the
 ; he soon had other
 F. Olivarez, who, on
 F. Ydalgo, as a per-
 rbulent, and danger-
 been excluded from

the mission to the Assinai, being then at
 the court of the Viceroy, saw with an evil
 eye the person who had settled F. Ydal-
 go, in that mission, and resolved to be a-
 venged on him for the vexation caused
 by that disappointment. He joined him-
 self to an officer, named Don Martin de
 Alaron, a person peculiarly protected by
 the Marquis of Balero: And they suc-
 ceeded so well with that Nobleman, that
 in the time M. de St. Denis least expect-
 ed, he found himself arrested, and clapt
 in a dungeon; from which he was not dis-
 charged till December 20th. of this year,
 by an order of the sovereign council of
 Mexico, to which he found means to
 present several petitions. The Viceroy,
 constrained to enlarge him, allotted the
 town for his place of confinement.

The business of the treaty of commerce
 being now at an end, M. de St. Denis's
 attention was only engaged how to make
 the most of the goods, of which Don
 Diego Raymond had sent as large a quan-
 tity as he could, to the town of Mexico;
 where they were seized by D. Martin de
 Alaron, as contraband; he being one of
 the emissaries of his protector, appoint-
 ed to persecute such strangers, as did not
 dearly purchase the permission to sell

their goods. M. de St. Denis could make only enough of his pillaged and damaged effects just to defray certain expences of suit, which in a country, that abounds with nothing else but gold and silver, are enormous.

Our prisoner having nothing further to engross his attention in Mexico, but the safety of his person, seriously betought himself how to secure it, as he had ever just grounds to apprehend some bad treatment at the hands of his three avowed enemies. Having therefore planned the means of his flight, on September 25, 1718, as the night came on, he quitted Mexico, and placing himself in ambush at a certain distance from the town, waited till his good fortune should afford the means of travelling otherwise than on foot. About nine at night, a horseman, well-mounted, cast up. To rush on a sudden upon him, dismount him, mount his horse, turn the bridle, and set up a gallop, was the work of a moment only for St. Denis. He rode on at a good pace till day, then quitted the common road, to repose himself: a precaution he observed all along, till he came near to the Presidio of St. John Baptist. From thence he continued his journey on foot:

de St. Denis could
of his pillaged and
to defray certain ex-
ch in a country, that
ng else but gold and
s.

iving nothing further
tion in Mexico, but
person, seriously be-
w to secure it; as he
nds to apprehend some
he hands of his three
Having therefore plan-
of his flight, on Sep-
as the night came on,
o, and placing himself
tain distance from the
his good fortune should
of travelling otherwise
About nine at night, a
mounted, cast up. To
upon him, dismount him,
turn the bridle, and set
the work of a moment
s. He rode on at a good
then quitted the common
himself: a precaution he
ng, till he came near to
St. John Baptist. From
ued his journey on foot;

and at length, on April 2d. 1719, he ar-
rived at the French colony, where he
found considerable alterations.

From the departure of M. de St. Denis
from Mexico, to his return again, almost
three years had elapsed. In that long
time, the grant of Louisiana was transfer-
ed from M. Crozat to the West India com-
pany; M. de la Motte Cadillac was dead,
and M. de Biainville, brother to M. d' Hi-
berville, succeeded as Governor General.
The capital place of the colony was no
longer at Mobile, nor even at Old Biloxi,
whither it had been removed: New Or-
leans, now begun to be built, was become
the capital of the country, whither he
repaired to give M. de Biainville an ac-
count of his journey; after which he re-
tired to his settlement. The King af-
terwards conferred upon him the Cross
of St. Louis, in acknowledgement and
recompence of his services.

The West India Company building
great hopes of commerce on Louisiana,
made efforts to people that country, suf-
ficient to accomplish their end. Thither,
for the first time, they sent, a colony of
eight hundred men: Some of which settled
at New Orleans, others formed the set-
tlements of the Natchez.

In the same year, towards the end of Summer, was the first war with the Natchez. The French had settled at the Natchez, without any opposition from these people ; so far from opposing them, they did them a great deal of service, and gave them very material assistance in procuring provisions ; for those, who were sent by the West-India Company with the first fleet, had been detained at New-Orleans. Had it not been for the Natives, the people must have perished by famine and distress : For, how excellent soever a new country may be, it must be cleared, grubbed up and sown, and then at least we are to wait the first harvest, or crop. But during all that time the people must live, and the Company was well apprised of this, as they had sent, with the eight hundred men they had transported to Louisiana, provisions for three years. The Grantees and Planters, obliged to treat, or truck for provisions with the Natchez, in consequence of that, saw their funds wasted, and themselves incapable of forming so considerable a settlement, without this trucking, as necessary, as it was frequent.

However, some benefit resulted from this ; namely that the Natchez, enticed

year, towards the end of the first war with the Natchez had settled at the Natchez, any opposition from far from opposing them, great deal of service, and material assistance in provisions; for those, who were sent to the East-India Company with had been detained at New-Orleans, it not been for the Natchez, they must have perished by the Natchez: For, how excellent a country may be, it must be laid up and down, and then to wait the first harvest, during all that time the people of the Company was well as they had sent, with the Natchez, when they had transported provisions for three years. The Natchez, obliged to provide provisions with the Natchez, of that, saw their funds themselves incapable of forming a settlement, without, as necessary, as it was the benefit resulted from the Natchez, enticed

by the facility of trucking for goods, before unknown among them, as fusils, gunpowder, lead, brandy, linen, cloths, and other like things; by means of an exchange of what they abounded with, came to be more and more attached to the French; and would have continued very useful friends, had not the little satisfaction, which the Commandant of Fort Rosalie had given them, for the misbehaviour of one of his soldiers, alienated their minds. This Fort covered the settlement of the Natchez, and protected that of St. Catharine, which was on the banks of the rivulet of the Natchez; but both the defence and protection it afforded were very inconsiderable; for this Fort was only palisaded, open at six breaches, without a ditch, and with a very weak garrison. On the other hand, the houses of the inhabitants, tho' considerably numerous, were of themselves of no strength; and then the inhabitants, dispersed in the country, each amidst his field, far from affording mutual assistance, as they would, had they been in a body, stood each of them, upon any accident, in need of the assistance of others.

A young soldier of Fort Rosalie had given some credit to an old warrior of a

village of the Natchez ; which was that of the White Apple, each village having its peculiar name : The warrior, in return, was to give him some corn. Towards the beginning of the winter 1723, this foldier lodging near the Fort, the old warrior came to see him ; the soldier insisted on his corn ; the native answered calmly, that the corn was not yet dry enough to shrike out the grain ; that besides, his wife had been ill, and that he would pay him as soon as possible. The young man, little satisfied at this answer, threatened to cudgel the old man : Upon which, this last, who was in the soldier's hut, affronted at his threat, told him, he should turn out, and try who was the best man. On this challenge, the soldier, calling out Murder, brings the guard to his assistance. The guard being come, the young fellow pressed them to fire upon the warrior, who was returning to his village at his usual pace ; a soldier was imprudent enough to fire ; The old man dropt down. The Commandant was soon apprised of what happened, and came to the spot, where the witnesses, both French and Natchez, informed him of the fact. Both justice and prudence demanded to take an exemplary punishment of the sol-

Natchez ; which was that
 people, each village having
 one : The warrior, in re-
 ve him some corn. To-
 mning of the winter 1723,
 ing near the Fort, the
 e to see him ; the soldier
 orri ; the native answered
 e corn was not yet dry e-
 out the grain ; that be-
 had been ill, and that he
 as soon as possible. The
 e satisfied at this answer,
 udgel the old man : Upon
 t, who was in the soldier's
 at his threat, told him, he
 ut, and try who was the best
 challenge, the soldier, cal-
 der, brings the guard to his
 he guard being come, the
 pressed them to fire upon
 who was returning to his
 usual pace ; a soldier was
 ough to fire ; The old man
 The Commandant was soon
 hat happened, and came to
 ere the witnesses, both French
 informed him of the fact.
 and prudence demanded to
 ply punishment of the fol-

dier ; but he got off with a reprimand.
 After this the natives made a litter, and
 carried off their warrior, who died the
 following night of his wounds, tho' the
 fusil was only charged with great shot.

Revenge is the predominant passion of
 the people in America : So we ought not
 to be surpris'd, if the death of this old
 warrior rais'd his whole village against
 the French. The rest of the nation took
 no part at first in the quarrel.

The first effect of the resentment of the
 Natchez fell upon a Frenchman named
 M. Guenot, whom they surpris'd retur-
 ning from the Fort to St. Catharine, and
 upon another inhabitant, whom they killed
 in his bed. Soon after they attacked, all
 in a body, the settlement of St. Catharine,
 and the other below Fort Rosalie.

However, the Commandant of Fort
 Rosalie sent to treat with the Stung Ser-
 pent, in order to prevail with him to ap-
 pease that part of his nation, and procure
 a peace. As that great warrior was our
 friend, he effectually laboured for it
 and hostilities ceased.

The commerce, or truck, was set a-
 gain on the same footing it had been be-
 fore ; and those who had suffered any
 damage, now thought only how they

might best repair it. Some time after, the Major General arrived from New Orleans, being sent by the Governor of Louisiana to ratify the peace; which he did, and mutual sincerity was restored, and became as perfect, as if there had never been any rupture between us.

The Winter, which succeeded this war, was so severe, that a colder was never remembered. The rain fell in icicles in such quantities as to astonish the oldest Natchez, to whom this great cold appeared new and uncommon.

M. de Biainville, at the beginning of the Winter arrived very privately at our quarter of the Natchez, his march having been communicated to none but the Commandant of this Post; who had orders to seize all the Natchez, that should come to the Fort that day, to prevent the news of his arrival being carried to their countrymen. He brought with him, in regular troops, inhabitants, and natives, who were our allies, to the number of seven hundred men. He demanded the head of an old mutinous Chief of this village; and the natives, in order to obtain a peace, delivered him up.

The Padoucas, who lie West by Northwest of the Missouri, happened at that

it. Some time after, a vessel arrived from New Orleans by the Governor of Louisiana, which he had by the peace; which he had sincerity was restored, as if there had been a rupture between us.

which succeeded this war, but a colder was never re-ignited till in icicles in fact the oldest Natchez great cold appeared.

At the beginning of the war, he arrived very privately at our camp, his march having been concealed to none but the Natchez; who had ordered the Natchez, that should that day, to prevent the war being carried to their camp, he brought with him, in addition to the number of soldiers, to the number of soldiers. He demanded the Natchez Chief of this war, in order to obtain him up.

, who lie West by North, happened at that

time to be at war with the neighbouring nations, the Canzas, Othouez, Aiaouz, Osages, Missouris, and Panmahas, all in amity with the French. To conciliate a peace between all these nations and the Padoucas M. de Bourgmont set to engage them, as being our allies, to accompany him on a journey to the Padoucas, in order to bring about a general pacification and by that means to facilitate the traffic, or truck between them and us, and conclude an alliance with the Padoucas.

For this purpose M. de Bourgmont set out on the 3d of July, 1724, from Fort Orleans, which lies near the Missouris, a nation dwelling on the banks of the river of that name, in order to join that people, and then to proceed to the Canzas, where the general rendezvous of the several nations was appointed.

M. de Bourgmont was accompanied by an hundred Missouris, commanded by their Grand Chief, and eight other Chiefs of war, and by sixty-four Osages, commanded by four Chiefs of war, besides a few Frenchmen. On the 6th he joined the Grand Chief, six other Chiefs of war, and several Warriors of the Canzas, who presented him the Pipe of Peace, and

performed the honours, customary on such occasions, to the Missouris and Osages.

On the 7th they passed thro' extensive meadows and woods, and arrived on the banks of the river Missouri, over against the village of the Canzas.

On the 8th the French crossed the Missouri in a pettyauger, the Indians on floats of cane, and the horses were swum over. They landed within a gun-shot of the Canzas, who flocked to receive them with the Pipe; their Grand Chief, in the nation, assuring M. de Bourgmont, that all their Warriors would accompany him in his journey to the Padoucas, with protestations of friendship and fidelity, confirmed by smoking the Pipe. The same assurances were made him by the other Chiefs, who entertained him in their huts, and* rubbed him over and his companions,

On the 9th M. de Bourgmont dispatched five Missouris to acquaint the Othouaz who promised to hunt for him and his Warriors, and to cause provisions to be dried for the journey; that their Chief would set out directly, in order to wait on M. de Bourgmont, and carry him the word of the whole nation.

* It is thus they express their joy, and caresses, at the sight of a person they respect.

honours, customary on
the Missouri and Osa-

y passed thro' extensive
ods, and arrived on the
Missouri, over against the
zas.

French crossed the Mis-
souri, the Indians on floats
horses were swum over.
thin a gun-shot of the
ked to receive them with
and Chief, in the nation,
Bourgmont, that all their
accompany him in his
loucas, with protestations
fidelity, confirmed by
e. The same assurances
by the other Chiefs, who
in their huts, and* rub-
d his companions,

de Bourgmont dispatch-
s to acquaint the Othouaz
hunt for him and his War-
use provisions to be dri-
y; that their Chief would
, in order to wait on
nt, and carry him the word
ion.

express their joy and caresses,
from they respect.

The Conzas continued to regale the
French; and brought them also great
quantities of grapes, of which the French
made a good wine.

On the 24th, of July, at six in the mor-
ning, this little army set out, consisting
of three hundred Warriors, including the
Chiefs of the Conzas, three hundred wo-
men, about five hundred young people,
and at least three hundred dogs. The
women carried considerable loads to the
astonishment of the French, unaccustom-
ed to such a sight. The young women al-
so were well loaded for their years; and
the dogs were made to trail a part of the
baggage, and that in the following man-
ner; The back of the dog was covered
with a skin, with its pile on, then the dog
was girthed round, and his breast-leather
put on; and taking two poles of the thick-
ness of one's arm, and twelve feet long,
they fastened their two ends half a foot a-
funder, laying in the dog's saddle the thong
that fastened the two poles; and to the
poles they also fastened, behind the dog,
a ring, or hoop lengthwise, on which
they laid the load.

On the 28th and 29th the army crossed
several brooks and small rivers, passed thro'
several meadows and thickets, meeting e-

very where on their way a great deal of game.

On the 38th M. de Bourgmont, finding himself very ill, was obliged to have a litter made, in order to be carried back to Fort Orleans till he should recover. Before his departure he gave orders about two Padouca slaves whom he had ransomed, and was to send before him to that nation, in order to ingratiate himself by this act of generosity. These he caused to be sent by one Gaillard, who was to tell their nation, that M. de Bourgmont, being fallen ill on his intended journey to their country, was obliged to return home; but that as soon as he got well again, he would resume his journey to their country, in order to procure a general peace between them and other nations.

On the evening of the same day arrived at the camp the Grand Chief of the Othouex; who acquainted M. de Bourgmont, that a great part of his Warriors waited for him on the road to the Padoucas, and that he came to receive his orders; but was sorry to find him ill.

At length, on the 4th of August, M. de Bourgmont set out from the Canzas in a pettyauger, and arrived the 5th at Fort Orleans.

ir way a great deal of

M. de Bourgmont, finding himself ill, was obliged to have order to be carried back till he should recover. He gave orders about those whom he had ransomed to send before him to try to ingratiate himself with them. These he cautioned Gaillard, who was to accompany him, that M. de Bourgmont, in his intended journey to the Canzas, was obliged to return home; and as he got well again, he resumed his journey to their country to procure a general peace with other nations.

On the same day arrived the Grand Chief of the Canzas, acquainted M. de Bourgmont with a great part of his Warriors on the road to the Padoucas, came to receive his orders; and he found him ill.

On the 4th of August, M. de Bourgmont returned from the Canzas in a good health, and arrived the 5th at Fort

On the 6th of September M. de Bourgmont, who was still at Fort Orleans, was informed of the two Padouca slaves on the 25th of August at their own nation; and that meeting on the way a body of Padouca hunters a day's journey from their village, the Padouca slaves made the signal of their nation, by throwing their mantles thrice over their heads: that they spoke much in commendation of the generosity of M. de Bourgmont, who had ransomed them; told all he had done in order to a general pacification: In fine, extolled the French to such a degree, that their discourse, held in presence of the Grand Chief and of the whole nation, diffused an universal joy: That Gaillard told them, the flag they saw was the symbol of Peace, and the word of the Sovereign of the French: That in a little time the several nations would come to be like brethren, and have but one heart.

The grand Chief of the Padoucas was so well assured that the war was now at an end, that he dispatched twenty Padoucas with Gaillard to the Canzas, by whom they were extremely well received. The Padoucas, on their return home related their good reception among the Canzas; and as plain and real proof of the pacifi-

cation, mediated by the French, brought them fifty of the Canzas, and three of their women ; who in their turn, were received by the Padoucas with all possible marks of friendship.

Tho' M. de Bourgmont was but just recovering of his illness ; he, however, prepared for his departure, and on the 20th of September actually set out from Fort Orleans by water, and arrived at the Canzas on the 27th.

Gaillard arrived on the 2d of October at the camp of the Canzas, with three Chiefs of war, and three Warriors of the Padoucas, who were received by M. de Bourgmont with a flag displayed, and other testimonies of civility, and had presents made them of several goods, proper for their use.

On the 4th of October arrived at the Canzas the Grand Chief, and seven other Chiefs of war of the Otnouez ; and next day, very early, six Chiefs of war of the Ainaouez.

M. de Bourgmont assembled all the Chiefs present, and setting them round a large fire made before his tent, rose up and addressing himself to them, said he was come to declare to them, in the name of his Sovereign, and of the Grand

y the French, brought
Canzas, and three of
in their turn, were
doucas with all possible
p.

Bourgmont was but just
illness; he, however,
departure, and on the
r actually set out from
water, and arrived at the
th.

d on the 2d of October
he Conzas, with three
and three Warriors of
o were received by M.
with a flag displayed, and
of civility, and had pre-
of several goods, proper

October arrived at the
nd Chief, and seven o-
ar of the Omouez; and
early, six Chiefs of war

mont assembled all the
and setting them round
before his tent, rose up
himself to them, said he
declare to them, in the
ereign, and of the Grand

French Chief in the country, that it was
the will of his Sovereign, they should all
live in peace for the future, like bre-
thren and friends, if they expected to en-
joy his love and protection: And since
says he, you are here all assembled this
day, it is good you conclude a peace, and
all smoke in the same pipe.

The Chiefs of these different nations
rose up to a man, and said with one con-
sent, they were well satisfied to comply
with his request; and instantly gave each
other their Pipes of Peace.

After an entertainment prepared for
them the Padoucas sung the Songs, and
danced the Dances of Peace; a kind of
pantomimes, representing the innocent
pleasures of peace.

On the 6th of October M. de Bourg-
mont caused three lots of goods to be
made out; one for the Othouez, one for
the Aiaouez, and one for the Panimahas,
which last arrived in the mean time; and
made them all smoke in the same Pipe of
Peace.

On the 8th M. de Bourgmont set out
from the Canzas with all the baggage, and
the flag displayed, at the head of the French
and such Indians as he had pitched on to
accompany him, in all forty persons. The

goods intended for presents were loaded on horses. As they fat out late, they travelled but five leagues, in which they crossed a small river and two brooks, in a fine country, with little wood.

The same day Gaillard, Quenel, and two Padoucas were dispatched to acquaint their nation with the march of the French. That day they travelled ten leagues, crossed one river and two brooks.

The 10th they made eight leagues, crossed two small rivers and three brooks. To their right and left they had several small hills, on which one could observe pieces of rock, even with the ground. Along the rivers there is found a slate, and in the meadows, a reddish marble, standing out of the earth one, two, and three feet; some pieces of it upwards of six feet in diameter.

The 11th they passed over several brooks and a small river, and then the river of the Canzas, which had only three feet water. Further on, they found several brooks, issuing from the neighbouring little hills. The river of the Canzas runs directly from West to East, and falls into the Missouri; is very great in floods, because, according to the report of the Padoucas, it comes a great way off. The

or presents were loaded
they fat out late, they tra-
vellers, in which they
river and two brooks, in a
little wood.

Gaillard, Quenel, and
were dispatched to acquaint
the march of the French.
travelled ten leagues, cross-
ed two brooks.

made eight leagues, cross-
ed three brooks. To
it they had several small
one could observe pieces
in the ground. Along the
and a slate, and in the
th marble, standing out
two, and three feet;
upwards of six feet in di-

they passed over several
l river, and then the ri-
er, which had only three
her on, they found sever-
from the neighbouring
ver of the Canzas runs
st to East, and falls into
very great in floods, be-
to the report of the Pa-
a great way off. The

woods, which border this river, afford a
retreat to numbers of buffaloes and other
game. On the left were seen great emi-
nences, with hanging rocks.

The 12th of October, the journey, as
the preceding day, was extremely diversifi-
ed by the variety of objects. They cross-
ed eight brooks, beautiful meadows, co-
vered with herds of elks and buffaloes.
To the right the view was unbounded, but
to the left small hills were seen at a dist-
ance, which from time to time presented
the appearance of ancient castles.

The 13th, on their march they saw the
meadows covered almost entirely with
buffaloes, elks, and deer! so that one could
scarce distinguish the different herds, so
numerous and so intermixed were they.
The same day they passed thro' a wood al-
most two leagues long, and a pretty rough
ascent; a thing which seemed extraordi-
nary, as till then they only met with lit-
tle groves, the largest of which scarce
contained an hundred trees, but straight
as a cane; groves too small to afford a re-
treat to a quarter of the buffaloes and elks
seen there.

The 14th the march was retarded by
ascents and descents; from which issue
many springs of an extreme pure water,

forming several brooks, whose waters uniting, make little rivers that fall into the river of the Canzas :. And doubtless it is this multitude of brooks, which traverse and water these meadows, extending a great way out of sight, that invite those numerous herds of buffaloes.

The 15th they crossed several brooks and two little rivers. It is chiefly on the banks of the waters, that we find those enchanting groves, adorned with grass underneath, and so clear of underwood, that we may there hunt down a stag with ease.

The 16th they continued to pass over a similar landscape, the beauties of which were never cloying. Besides the larger game, these groves afford also a retreat to flocks of turkeys.

The 17th they made very little way, because they wanted to get into the right road, from which they had strayed the two preceding days ; which they at length recovered ; and at a small distance from their camp, saw an encampment of the Padoucas, which appeared to have been quitted only about eight days before. This yielded them so much the more pleasure, as it shewed the nearness of that nation, which made them encamp, after having

brooks, whose waters unite
the rivers that fall into the
as : And doubtless it is
of brooks, which traverse
meadows, extending a
fight, that invite those
of buffaloes.

They crossed several brooks
rivers. It is chiefly on the
rivers, that we find those
meadows, adorned with grass
so clear of underwood,
we hunt down a stag with

They continued to pass over a
the beauties of which
ing. Besides the larger
they afford also a retreat to

made very little way,
attempted to get into the right
when they had strayed the
days ; which they at length
at a small distance from
an encampment of the
appeared to have been
at eight days before. This
much the more pleasure,
nearness of that nation,
an encamp, after having

travelled only six leagues, in order to make
signals from that place, by setting fire to
the parts of the meadows, which the gen-
eral fire had spared. In a little time after,
the signal was answered in the same man-
ner ; and confirmed by the arrival of the
two Frenchmen, who had orders given
them to make the signals.

On the 18th they met a little river of
brackish water ; on the banks of which
they found another encampment of the
Padoucas, which appeared to have been
abandoned but four days before : At half
a league further on, a great smoke was
seen to the west, at no great distance off,
which was answered by setting fire to the
parts of the meadows, untouched by the
general fire.

About half an hour after, the Padou-
cas were observed coming at full gallop
with the flag, which Gaillard had left with
them on his first journey to their country,
M. de Bourgmont instantly ordered the
French under arms ; and at the head of
his people thrice saluted these strangers
with his flag ; which they also returned
thrice, by raising their mantles as many
times over their heads.

After this first ceremony, M. de Bour-
gmont made them all sit down, and smoke

in the Pipe of Peace. This action, being the seal of the peace, diffused a general joy, accompanied with loud acclamations

The Padoucas, after mounting the French and the Indians who accompanied them, on their horses, set out for their camp : and after a journey of three leagues, arrived at their encampment ; but left a distance of a gun-shot between the two camps.

The day after their arrival at the Padoucas, M. de Bourgmont caused the goods, allotted for this nation, to be unpacked, and the different species parcelled out, which he made them all presents of†.

After which M. de Bourgmont sent for the Grand Chief and other Chiefs of the Padoucas, who came to the camp to the number of two hundred : And placing himself between them and the goods, thus parcelled and laid out to view, told them, he was sent by his Sovereign to carry them the word of Peace, this flag, and these

† Red and blue Linburs, shirts, fusils, fabres, gun-powder, ball, musket-flints, gunscrews, hatchets, looking-glasses, Flemish knives, wood-cutters knives, clasp-knives, scissars, combs, bells, awls, needles, drinking-glasses, brace-wire, boxes, rings, &c.

peace. This action, being
peace, diffused a general
ed. with loud acclama-

as, after mounting the
Indians who accompanied
horses, set out for their
a journey of three leagues,
encampment; but left a
n-shot between the two

their arrival at the Pa-
Bourgmont caused the
or this nation, to be un-
different species parcel-
ne made them all presents

M. de Bourgmont sent for
f and other Chiefs of the
came to the camp to the
o hundred: And placing
a them and the goods, thus
id out to view, told them,
his Sovereign to carry them
peace, this flag, and these

Limburgs, shirts, fusils, fabres,
masker-flints, gunscrews, hatch-
y, Flemish knives, wood-cutters
es, scissors, combs, bells, awls,
glasses, brace-wire, boxes, rings,

goods, and to exhort them to live as bre-
thren with their neighbours, the Panima-
has, Aiaouez, Othouez, Canzas, Mis-
fouris, Ojages, and Illinois, to traffic and
truck freely together; and with the French.

He at the same time gave the flag to the
Grand Chief of the Padoucas, who re-
ceived it with demonstrations of respect,
and told him: I accept this flag, which
you present to me on the part of your
Sovereign: We rejoice at our having
peace with all nations you have mention-
ed; and promise in the name of our na-
tion never to make war on any of your al-
lies; but receive them, when they come
among us, as our brethren; as we shall in
like manner, the French and conduct
them, when they want to go to the Spa-
niards, who are but twelve days journey
from our village, and who truck with us
in horses, of which they have such num-
bers, they know not what to do with
them; also in bed hatchets of a soft iron,
and some knives, whose points they break
off, lest we should use them one day a-
gainst themselves. You may command
all my Warriors; I can furnish you with
upwards of two thousand. In my own,
and in the name of my whole nation, I en-
treat you would send some Frenchmen to

E

trade with us ; we can supply them with horses which we truck with the Spaniards for buffalo-mantles, and with great quantities of furs.

About the same time the Negroes formed a design to rid themselves of all the French at once, and to settle in their room, by making themselves masters of the Capital, and of all the property of the French. It was discovered in the following manner.

A female Negro receiving a violent blow from a French soldier, for refusing to obey him, said in her passion, that the French should not long insult Negroes. Some Frenchmen, overhearing these threats, brought her before the Governor, who sent her to prison : and in two days after, eight negroes, who were at the head of the conspiracy, were separately arrested, unknown to each other, and clapt into irons without the least tumult.

The day after, they were put to the torture of burning matches ; which, tho' several times repeated, could not bring them to make any confession. At last one of them owned all the circumstances of the conspiracy ; and the rest, being confronted with him, confessed also : After which, the eight Negroes were condemned to be

can supply them with
truck with the Span-
antles, and with great

time the Negroes for-
d themselves of all the
and to settle in their
g themselves masters of
of all the property of
as discovered in the fol-

ro receiving a violent
ch foldier, for refusing
in her passion, that the
t long insult Negroes.
en, overhearing these
er before the Governor,
rison: and in two days
es, who were at the
piracy, were separately
wn to each other, and
without the least tumult.
, they were put to the
g matches; which, tho'
eated, could not bring
confession. At last one of
the circumstances of the
the rest, being confront-
fessed also: After which,
s were condemned to be

broke alive on the wheel, and the woman
to be hanged before their eyes; which
was accordingly done, and prevented the
conspiracy from taking effect.

In the beginning of the month of De-
cember 1799, the French at the post of
Natchez were all massacred, we shall
here relate the particulars of this sad e-
vent.

The Sieur de Chopart had been Com-
mandant of the post of the Natchez, from
which he was removed on account of
some acts of injustice. M. Perier, Com-
mandant General, but lately arrived, suf-
fered himself to be pre-possessed in his
favour, on his telling him that he had
commanded that Post with applause: And
thus he obtained the command from M.
Perier, who was unacquainted with his
character.

This new Commandant, on taking pos-
session of his Post, projected the form-
ing one of the most eminent settlements
of the whole Colony. For this purpose
he examined all the grounds, unoccupied
by the French: But could not find any
thing that came up to the grandeur of his
views. Nothing but the village of the
White apple, a square league at least in
extent, could give him satisfaction; where

he immediately resolved to settle. This ground was distant from the Fort about two leagues. Conceited with the beauty of his project, the Commandant sent for the Sun of that village to come to the Fort.

The Commandant upon his arrival at the Fort, told him, without further ceremony, that he must look out for another ground to build his village on, as he himself resolved, as soon as possible, to build on the village of the Apple; that he must directly clear the huts, and retire somewhere else. The better to cover his design, he gave out, that it was necessary for the French to settle on the banks of the rivulet, where stood the Great Village, and the abode of the Grand Sun. The Commandant, doubtless, supposed that he was speaking to a slave, whom we may command in a tone of absolute authority. But he knew not, that the natives of Louisiana are such enemies to a state of slavery, that they prefer death itself thereto; above all, the Suns accustomed to govern despotically, have still a greater aversion to it.

The Sun of the Apple thought, that if he was talked to in a reasonable manner, he might listen to him: In this he had

solved to settle. This
from the Fort about
reited with the beauty
e Commandant sent for
illage to come to the

ant upon his arrival at
, without further cere-
ist look out for another
is village on, as he him-
on as possible, to build
he Apple; that he must
huts, and retire some-
better to cover his de-
that it was necessary
settle on the banks of
stood the Great Vil-
de of the Grand Sun.
t, doubtless, supposed
ing to a slave, whom we
a tone of absolute au-
new not, that the na-
are such enemies to a
at they prefer death it-
ve all, the Suns accus-
despotically, have still a
bit.

Apple thought, that if
in a reasonable manner,
him : In this he had

been right, had he to deal with a reason-
able person. He therefore made answer,
that his ancestors had lived in that vil-
lage for as many years as there were hairs
in his double cue, and therefore it was
good, that they should continue there
still.

Scarce had the interpreter explained
this answer to the Commandant, but he
fell into a passion, and threatened the
Sun, if he did not quit his village in a few
days, he might repent it. The Sun re-
plied ; when the French came to ask us
for lands to settle on, they told us, there
was land enough still unoccupied, which
they might take; the same sun would en-
lighten them all, and all would walk in
the same path. He wanted to proceed
farther in justification of what he alleg-
ed ; but the commandant, who was in a
passion, told him, he was resolved to be
obeyed, without any further reply. The
Sun, without discovering any emotion or
passion, withdrew, only saying, he was
going to assemble the old men of his vil-
lage, to hold a Council on this affair.

He actually assembled them : And in
this Council it was resolved to represent
to the Commandant, that the corn of all
the people of their village was already

shot a little out of the earth, and that all the hens were laying their eggs ; that if they quitted their village at present, the chickens and corn would be lost both to the French and to themselves ; as the French were not numerous enough to weed all the corn, they had sown in their fields.

This resolution taken, they sent to propose it to the Commandant, who rejected it with a menace to chastise them, if they did not obey in a very short time, which he prefixed.

The Sun reported this answer to his Council, who debated the question, which was knotty. But the policy of the old men was, that they should propose to the Commandant, to be allowed to stay in their village till harvest, and till they had time to dry their corn, and shake out the grain ; on condition each hut of the village should pay him in so many moons (months,) which they agreed on, a basket of corn and a fowl ; that this Commandant appeared to be a man highly self-interested, and that this proposition would be a means of gaining time, till they should take proper means to withdraw themselves from the tyranny of the French.

of the earth, and that all
ing their eggs ; that if
village at present, the
would be lost both to
to themselves ; as the
t numerous enough to
they had sown in their

taken, they sent to pro-
mmandant, who rejected
to chastise them, if there
very short time, which

orted this answer to his
ated the question, which
t the policy of the old
y should propose to the
be allowed to stay in
harvest, and till they had
corn, and shake out the
ion each hut of the vil-
him in so many moons
they agreed on, a balk-
fowl ; that this Com-
ed to be a man highly
nd that this proposition
ns of gaining time, till
proper means to with-
from the tyranny of the

The Sun returned to the commandant,
and proposed to pay him the tribute I
just mentioned, if he waited till the first
colds, (winter ;) that then the corn
would be gathered in, and dry enough to
shake out the grain ; that thus, they would
not be exposed to lose their corn, and die
of hunger : That the Commandant him-
self would find his account in it, and that
as soon as the corn was shaken out, they
should bring him some.

The avidity of the Commandant made
him accept the proposition with joy, and
blinded him with regard to the conse-
quences of his tyranny. He, however,
pretended, that he agreed to the offer out
of favour, to do a pleasure to a nation so
beloved, and who had ever been good
friends of the French. The Sun appear-
ed highly satisfied to have obtained a de-
lay, sufficient for taking the precautions
necessary to the security of the nation ; for,
he was by no means the dupe of the feign-
ed benevolence of the Commandant.

The Sun, upon his return, caused the
Council to be assembled ; told the old
men, that the French Commandant had
acquiesced in the offers which he had
made him, and granted the term of time
they demanded. He then laid before

them, that it was necessary, wisely to avail themselves of this time, in order to withdraw themselves from the proposed payment and tyrannic domination of the French, who grew dangerous in proportion as they multiplied. That the Natchez ought to remember the war, made upon them, in violation of the peace concluded between them : That this war having been made upon their village alone, they ought to consider of the surest means to take a just and a bloody vengeance : That this enterprize being of the utmost consequence, it called for much secrecy, for solid measures, and for much policy : That thus it was proper to cajole the French Chief more than ever : That this affair required some days to reflect on, before they came to a resolution therein, and before it should be proposed to the Grand Sun and his Council : That at present they had only to retire ; and in a few days he would assemble them again, that they might then determine the part they were to act.

In five or six days he brought together the old men, who in that interval were consulting with each other ; which was the reason, that all the suffrages were unanimous in the same and only means of

necessary, wisely to a-
this time, in order to
ves from the proposed
unic domination of the
dangerous in propor-
plied. That the Nat-
member the war, made
ation of the peace con-
them : That this war ha-
upon their village alone,
sider of the surest means
d a bloody vengeance :
rize being of the utmost
called for much secrecy,
es, and for much policy :
as proper to cajole the
ore than ever : That this
ome days to reflect on,
e to a resolution therein,
uld be proposed to the
d his Council : That at
d only to retire ; and in
ould assemble them again,
then determine the part

days he brought together
ho in that interval were
each other : which was
t all the suffrages were u-
e same and only means of

obtaining the end, they proposed to them-
selves, which was the entire destruction
of the French in this province.

The Sun, seeing them all assembled said :
" You have had time to reflect on the
" proposition I made you : and so I im-
" agine, you will soon set forth the best
" means, how to get rid of your bad
" neighbours without hazard." The Sun
having done speaking, the oldest rose up,
saluted his Chief after his manner, and
said to him :

" We have a long time been sensible,
" that the neighbourhood of the French
" is a greater prejudice than benefit to
" us : we, who are old men, see this ;
" the young see it not. The wares of
" the French yield pleasure to the youth ;
" but in effect to what purpose is all this,
" but to debauch the young women, and
" taint the blood of the nation, and make
" them vain and idle ? The young men
" are in the same case ; and the married
" must work themselves to death to
" maintain their families, and to please
" their children. Before the French
" came amongst us, we were men, con-
" tent with what we had, and that was
" sufficient : we walked with boldness
" every road, because we were our own

" masters: but we now go groping, afraid
" of meeting thorns, we walk like slaves,
" which we shall soon be, since the French
" already treat us as if we were such.
" When they are sufficiently strong, they
" will no longer dissemble. For the least
" fault of our young people, they will
" tie them to a post, and whip them, as
" they do their black slaves. Have they
" not already done so to one of our
" young men; and is not death prefer-
" able to slavery?"

Here he paused a while, and after tak-
ing breath, proceeded thus:

" What wait we for? Shall we suffer
" the French to multiply, till we are
" no longer in a condition to oppose their
" efforts? What will the other nations
" say of us, who pass for the most ingen-
" ious of all the Red-men? They will
" then say, we have less understanding
" than other people. Why then wait we
" any longer? Let us set ourselves at li-
" berty, and show we are really men,
" who can be satisfied with what we
" have. From this very day let us begin
" to set about it, order our women to get
" provisions ready, without telling them
" the reason; go and carry the Pipe of
" Peace to all the nations of this country;

we now go groping, afraid
 horns, we walk like slaves,
 all soon be, since the French
 us as if we were such.
 are sufficiently strong, they
 er diffemble. For the least
 young people, they will
 a post, and whip them, as
 black slaves. Have they
 done so to one of our
 ; and is not death prefer-
 ry?"

led a while, and after tak-
 oceeded thus:

it we for? Shall we suffer
 to multiply, till we are
 a condition to oppose their
 hat will the other nations
 ho pass for the most ingen-
 the Red-men? They will
 e have less understanding
 people. Why then wait we
 ? Let us set ourselves at li-
 show we are really men,
 e satisfied with what we
 n this very day let us begin
 it, order our women to get
 ready, without telling them
 go and carry the Pipe of
 the nations of this country;

" make them sensible, that the French,
 " being stronger in our neighbourhood
 " than elsewhere, make us, more than
 " others, feel that they want to enslave
 " us; and becoming sufficiently strong,
 " will, in like manner, treat all the na-
 " tions of the country; that it is their wish
 " to prevent so great a misfortune; and
 " for this purpose they have only to join
 " us, and cut off the French to a man,
 " in one day and one hour; and the time
 " to be that, on which the term prefix-
 " ed and obtained of the French Com-
 " mandant, to carry him the contribution
 " agreed on, is expired; the hour to be
 " the quarter of the day (nine in the
 " morning;) and then several warriors
 " to go and carry him the corn, as the
 " beginning of their several payments,
 " also carry with them their arms, as if
 " going out to hunt: and that to every
 " Frenchman in a French house, there
 " shall be two or three Natchez; to ask
 " to borrow arms and ammunition, for a
 " general hunting-match, on account of
 " a great feast, and to promise to bring
 " them meat; the report of the firing at
 " the Commandant's, to be the signal to
 " fall at once upon, and kill the French:
 " That then we shall be able to prevent

" those, who may come from the old
" French village, (New Orleans) by the
" great water (Mississippi) ever to settle
" here."

He added, that after apprizing the other nations of the necessity of taking that violent step, a bundle of rods, in number equal to that they should reserve for themselves, should be left with each nation, expressive of the number of days that were to precede that on which they were to strike the blow at one and the same time. And to avoid mistakes, and to be exact in pulling out a rod everyday, and breaking and throwing it away, it was necessary to give this in charge to a person of prudence. Here he ceased and sat down: They all approved his counsel, and were to a man of his mind.

The project was in a like manner approved of by the Sun of the Apple: The business was to bring over the Grand Sun, with the other Petty Suns, to their opinion; because all the Princes being agreed as to that point, the nation would all to a man implicitly obey. They however took the precaution to forbid apprizing the women thereof, not excepting the female Suns, (Princesses,) or giv-

o may come from the old
age, (New Orleans) by the
er (Mississippi) ever to settle

that after apprising the o-
f the necessity of taking that
a bundle of rods, in num-
that they should reserve for
ould be left with each na-
e of the number of days
ecede that on which they
the blow at one and the
And to avoid mistakes, and
pulling out a rod every day,
and throwing it away, it
to give this in charge to a
lence. Here he ceased and
: They all approved his
were to a man of his

t was in a like manner ap-
the Sun of the Apple : The
to bring over the Grand
other Petty Suns, to their
ause all the Princes being
at point, the nation would
mplicitly obey. They how-
precaution to forbid ap-
omen thereof, not except-
Suns, (Princesses,) or giv-

ing them the least suspicion of their de-
signs against the French.

The Sun of the Apple was a man of
good abilities ; by which means he easi-
ly brought over the Grand Sun to favour
his scheme, he being a young man of no
experience in the world ; and having no
great correspondence with the French :
He was the more easily gained over, as all
the Suns were agreed, that the Sun of the
Apple was a man of solidity and penetra-
tion ; who having repaired to the Sover-
eign of the nation, apprised him of the
necessity of taking that step, as in time
himself would be forced to quit his own
village ; also of the wisdom of the mea-
sures concerted, such as even ascertained
success ; and of the danger to which his
youth was exposed, with neighbours so
enterprising ; above all, with the present
French Commandant, of whom the inha-
bitants, and even the soldiers complained :
That as long as the Grand Sun, his fa-
ther, and his uncle, the Stung Serpe-
lived, the Commandant of the Fort durst
never undertake any thing to their detri-
ment ; because the Grand Chief of the
French, who resides at their great village
(New Orleans) had a love for them : But
that he, the Grand Sun, being unknown

to the French, and but a youth, would be despised. In fine, that the only means to preserve his authority, was to rid himself of the French, by the method, and with the precautions, projected by the old men.

The result of this conversation was, that on the day following, when the Suns would in the morning come to salute the Grand Sun, he was to order them to repair to the Sun of the Apple, without taking notice of it to any one. This was accordingly executed, and the seducing abilities of the Sun of the Apple drew all the Suns into his scheme. In consequence of which they formed a Council of Suns and aged Nobles, who all approved of the design : And then the aged Nobles were nominated Heads of Embassies to be sent to the several Nations; had a guard of Warriors to accompany them, and, on pain of death, were charged from mentioning it to any one whatever. This resolution taken, they set out severally at the same time, unknown to the French.

Notwithstanding the profound secrecy observed by the Natchez, the Council held by the Suns and aged Nobles gave the people uneasiness, unable as they

and but a youth, would be
 e, that the only means to
 ority, was to rid himself
 by the method, and with
 s, projected by the old

f this conversation was,
 following, when the Suns
 orning come to salute the
 was to order them to re-
 of the Apple, without ta-
 t to any one. This was
 cuted, and the seducing
 Sun of the Apple drew
 o his scheme. In conse-
 h they formed a Council
 ed Nobles, who all
 esign : And then
 ere nominated Head
 ent to the several Nations;
 Warriors to accompany
 pain of death, were char-
 oning it to any one what-
 solution taken, they set
 the same time, unknown

ding the profound secrecy
 e Natchez, the Council
 as and aged Nobles gave
 easiness, unable as they

were to penetrate into the matter. The
 female Suns (Princesses) had alone in this
 Nation a right to demand, why they were
 kept in the dark of this affair. The
 young Grand female Sun was a Princess
 scarce eighteen: And none but the Stung
 Arm, a woman of great wit, and no less
 sensible of it, could be offended, that
 nothing was disclosed to her. In effect,
 she testified her displeasure at this reserve
 with respect to herself, to her son; who
 replied, that the several Deputations were
 made, in order to renew their good in-
 telligence with the other nations, to whom
 they had not for a long time sent an En-
 bassy, and who might imagine themselves
 slighted at such a neglect. This feigned
 excuse seemed to appease the Princess,
 but not quite to rid her of all her uneasi-
 ness; which, on the contrary, was height-
 ened, when, on the return of the Enbas-
 sies, she saw the Suns assemble in secret
 Council together with the Deputies, to
 learn what reception they met with; where-
 as ordinarily they assembled in public.

At this the female Sun was filled with
 rage, which would have openly broken
 out, had not her prudence set bounds to
 it. Happy it was for the French, she im-
 agined herself neglected; for I am per-

suaded the Colony owes its preservation to the vexation of this woman rather than to any remains of affection she entertained for the French, as she was now far advanced in years, and her gallant dead some time.

In order to get the bottom of the secret, she prevailed on her son to accompany her on a visit to a relation, that lay sick at the village of the Meal; and leading him the longest way about, and most retired, took occasion to reproach him with the secrecy he and the other Suns observed with regard to her, insinuating with him on her right as a mother, and her privilege as a Princess: Adding, that tho' all the world, and herself too, had told him he was the son of a Frenchman, yet her own blood was much dearer to her than that of strangers; that he need not apprehend she would ever betray him to the French, against whom, said she, you are plotting.

Her son, stung with these reproaches, told her, it was unusual to reveal what the old men of the Council had once resolved upon; alledging, he himself, as being Grand Sun, ought to set a good example in this respect: That the affair was concealed from the Princess his consort as

owes its preservation
of this woman rather
of affection the en-
rench, as she was now
years, and her gallant

the bottom of the secret,
her son to accompany
relation, that lay sick at
Meal; and leading him
out, and most retired,
reproach him with the
the other Suns observed
r, insisting with him on
ther, and her privilege
dding, that tho' all the
f too, had told him he
renchman, yet her own
clearer to her than that
t he need not appre-
ver betray him to the
hom, said she, you are

with these reproaches,
usual to reveal what the
ouncil had once resolved
he himself, as being
t to set a good example
That the affair was con-
Princess his comfort as

well as from her; and that tho' he was the
son of a Frenchman, this gave no mistrust of
him to the other Suns. But seeing, says
he, you have guessed the whole affair,
I need not inform you farther; you
know as much as I do myself, only hold
your tongue.

She was in no pain, she replied, to
know against whom he had taken this
precaution: But as it was against the
French, this was the very thing that made
her apprehensive he had not taken his
measures aright in order to surprise them;
as they were a people of great penetra-
tion, tho' their Commandant had none:
That they were brave, and could bring
over by their presents, all the Warriors of
the other nations; and had resources,
which the Red-men were without.

Her son told her, she had nothing to
apprehend as to the measures taken:
That all the Nations had heard and ap-
proved their project, and promised to fall
upon the French in their neighbourhood,
on the same day with the Natchez: That
the Choctaws took upon them to destroy
all the French lower down and along the
Mississippi, up as far as the Tonicas; to
which last people, he said, we did not
send; as they and the Oumas are too much

wedded to the French ; and that it was better to involve both these nations in the same general destruction with the French. He at last told her, the bundle of rods lay in the temple, on the flat timber.

The Stung Arm being informed of the whole design, pretended to approve of it, and leaving her son at ease, henceforward was only solicitous how she might defeat this barbarous design : The term prefixed for the execution was almost expired.

This woman, unable to bear to see the French cut off to a man in one day by the conspiracy of the natives, sought how to save the greatest part of them : For this purpose she bethought herself of acquainting some young women therewith, who loved the French, enjoining them never to tell, from whom they had their information.

She herself desired a soldier she met, to go and tell the Commandant, that the Natchez had lost their senses, and to desire him to be upon his guard : That he need only make the smallest repairs possible on the Fort, in presence of some of them, in order to shew his mistrust ; when all their resolutions and bad designs would vanish and fall to the ground.

French ; and that it was
with these nations in the
action with the French.
the bundle of rods lay
the flat timber.

being informed of the
ended to approve of it,
ion at ease, hencefor-
citous how she might
ous design : The term
ecution was almost ex-

nable to bear to see the
man in one day by the
atives, fought how to
art of them : For this
ht herself of acquaint-
omen therewith, who
enjoining them never
they had their infor-

ed a soldier she met,
Commandant, that the
their senses, and to de-
n his guard : That he
e smallest repairs possi-
presence of some of
ew his mistrust ; when
ons and bad designs
fall to the ground.

The soldier faithfully performed his
commission : But the Commandant, far
from giving credit to the information, or
availing himself thereof ; or diving in-
to, and informing himself of the grounds
of it, treated the soldier as a coward and
a visionary, caused him to be clapt in i-
rons, and said, he would never take any
step towards repairing the Fort, or put-
ting himself on his guard, as the Natchez
would then imagine he was a man of no
resolution, and was struck with a mere
panick.

The Stung Arm fearing a discovery,
notwithstanding her utmost precaution,
and the secrecy she enjoined, repaired to
the temple, and pulled some rods out of
the fatal bundle : Her design was to hasten,
or forward the term prefixed, to the end
that such Frenchmen, as escaped the
massacre, might apprize their country-
men, many of whom had informed the
Commandant ; who clapt seven of them
in irons, treating them as cowards on that
account.

The female Sun, seeing the term ap-
proaching, and many of those punished,
whom she had charged to acquaint the
Governor, resolved to speak to the Un-
der-Lieutenant ; but to no better purpose,

the Commandant paying no greater regard to him than to the common soldiers.

Notwithstanding all these informations, the Commandant went out the night before on a party of pleasure, with some other Frenchmen, to the Grand Village of the Natchez, without returning to the Fort till break of day; where he was no sooner come, but he had pressing advice to be upon his guard.

The Commandant, still flustered with his last night's debauch, added imprudence to his neglect of these last advices; and ordered his Interpreter instantly to repair to the Grand Village, and demand of the Grand Sun whether he intended, at the head of his warriors, to come and kill the French, and to bring him word directly. The Grand Sun, tho' but a young man, knew how to dissemble, and spoke in such a manner to the Interpreter, as to give full satisfaction to the Commandant, who valued himself on his contempt of former advices; He then repaired to his house, situate below the Fort.

The Natchez had too well taken their measures, to be disappointed in the success thereof. The fatal moment was at

not paying no greater re-
 an to the common fol-

ling all these informations,
 went out the night be-
 of pleasure, with some
 en, to the Grand Village
 without returning to the
 of day; where he was no
 at he had pressing advice
 guard.

ndant, still flustered with
 debauch, added impru-
 dence of these last advices;
 Interpreter instantly tore-
 and Village, and demand
 n whether he intended,
 is warriors, to come and
 and to bring him word
 Grand Sun, tho' but a
 w how to dissemble, and
 manner to the Interpre-
 satisfaction to the Com-
 manded himself on his con-
 advices; He then re-
 puse, situate below the

had too well taken their
 disappointed in the suc-
 the fatal moment was at

last come. The Natchez set out on the
 Eve of St. Andrew, 1729, taking care to
 bring with them one of the lower sort,
 armed with a wooden hatchet, in order to
 knock down the Commandant*: They had
 so high a contempt for him, that no War-
 rior would deign to kill him. The houses
 of the French were filled with enemies,
 the Fort in like manner with the natives,
 who entered in at the gate and breaches,
 deprived the soldiers, without officers, or
 even a serjeant at their head, of the means
 of self-defence. In the mean time the
 Grand Sun arrived, with some Warriors
 loaded with corn, in appearance as the
 first payment of the contribution; when
 several shot were fired. As this firing
 was the signal, several shot were heard at
 the same instant. Then at length the
 Commandant saw, but too late, his folly:
 He ran into his garden, whither he was
 pursued and killed. This massacre was
 executed every where at the same time.
 Of about seven hundred persons, but few
 escaped to carry the dreadful news to the
 Capital; on receiving which the Govern-
 or and Council were sensibly affected,

* Others say he was shot; But neither account
 can be ascertained, as no Frenchman present es-
 caped.

and orders were dispatched every where to put people on their guard.

The other Indians were displeased at the conduct of the Natchez, imagining they had forwarded the terms agreed on, in order to make them ridiculous, and proposed to take vengeance the first opportunity, not knowing the true cause of the precipitation of the Natchez.

After they had cleared the fort, warehouse, and other houses, the Natchez set them all on fire, not leaving a single building standing.

The Yazous, who happened to be at that very time on an embassy to the Natchez, were prevailed on to destroy the Post of the Yazous; which they failed not to effect some days after, making themselves masters of the Fort, under colour of paying a visit, as usual, and knocking all the garrison on the head.

M. Perier, Governor of Louisiana, was then taking the proper steps to be avenged; He sent M. le S^{ieur} to the Chactaws, to engage them on our side against the Natchez; in which he succeeded without any difficulty. The reason of their readiness to enter into this design was not then understood, it being unknown that they were concerned in the plot of

the Natchez, imagining
 ded the term agreed on,
 e them ridiculous, and
 e vengeance the first op-
 knowing the true cause of
 n of the Natchez.
 d cleared the fort, ware-
 r houses, the Natchez set
 not leaving a single build-

who happened to be at
 n an embassy to the Natchez
 iled on to destroy the
 ous; which they failed
 me days after, making
 ers of the Fort, underco-
 visit, as usual, and knock-
 son on the head.
 overnor of Louisiana, was
 proper steps to be aveng-
 le Saur to the Chac-
 them on our side against
 which he succeeded with-
 y. The reason of their
 er into this design was
 ood, it being unknown
 concerned in the plot of

the Natchez to destroy all the French,
 and that it was only to be avenged of the
 Natchez, who had taken the start of them,
 and not given them a sufficient share of
 the booty.

M. de Loubois, King's Lieutenant,
 was nominated to be at the head of this
 expedition: He went up the river with a
 small army, and arrived at the Tonicas.
 The Chactaws at length arrived in the
 month of February near the Natchez, to
 the number of fifteen or sixteen hundred
 men, with M. le Sueur at their head;
 whither M. de Loubois came the March
 following.

The army encamped near the ruins of
 the old French settlement; and after rest-
 ing five days there, they marched to the
 enemy's Fort which was a league from
 thence.

After opening the trenches and firing
 for several days upon the fort without any
 great effect, the French at last made their
 approach so near as to frighten the ene-
 my, who sent to offer to release all the
 French women and children, on condi-
 tion of obtaining a lasting peace, and of
 being suffered to live peaceably on their
 ground, without being driven from thence
 or molested for the future.

M. de Loubois assured them of peace on their own terms, if they also gave up the French, who were in the fort, and all the Negroes they had taken belonging to the French; and if they agreed to destroy the fort by fire. The Grand Sun accepted these conditions, provided the French General should promise, he would neither enter the fort with the French, nor suffer their auxiliaries to enter; which was accepted by the General; who sent the allies to receive all the slaves.

The Natchez, highly pleased to have gained time, availed themselves of the following night, and went out of the fort, with their wives and children, loaded with their baggage and the French plunder, leaving nothing but the cannon and ball behind.

M. de Loubois was struck with amazement at this escape, and only thought of retreating to the landing-place, in order to build a fort there: But first it was necessary to recover the French out of the hands of the Chaetaws, who insisted on a very high ransom. The matter was compromised by means of the Grand Chief of the Tonicas, who prevailed on them to accept what M. de Loubois was constrained to offer them, to satisfy their avarice;

assured them of peace
 ns, if they also gave up
 were in the fort, and
 they had taken belonging
 and if they agreed to de-
 fire. The Grand Sun
 onditions, provided the
 should promise, he would
 fort with the French,
 auxiliaries to enter; which
 the General; who sent
 ve all the slaves.

highly pleased to have
 ailed themselves of the
 and went out of the
 wives and children, load-
 ggage and the French
 nothing but the cannon

s was struck with amaze-
 ne, and only thought of
 anding-place, in order to
 : But first it was ne-
 r the French out of the
 ctaws, who insisted on a
 . The matter was com-
 ns of the Grand Chief of
 prevailed on them to
 e Loubois was constrain-
 to satisfy their avarice;

which they accordingly accepted, and
 gave up the French slaves, on promise of
 being paid as soon as possible : But they
 kept as security a young Frenchman and
 some Negro slaves, whom they would ne-
 ver part with, till payment was made.

M. de Loubois gave orders to build a
 terrace-fort, far preferable to a stoccardo ;
 there he left M. du Crenet, with an hun-
 dred and twenty men in garrison, with
 cannon and ammunition ; after which he
 went down the Mississippi to New Orleans.
 The Chaclaws, Tonicas, and other allies,
 returned home.

After the Natchez had abandoned the
 fort, it was demolished, and its piles, or
 stakes, burnt. As the Natchez dreaded
 both the vengeance of the French, and
 the insolence of the Chaclaws, that made
 them take the resolution of escaping in the
 night.

A short time after, a considerable par-
 ty of the Natchez carried the Pipe of
 Peace to the Grand Chief of the Tonicas,
 under pretence of concluding a peace
 with him and all the French. The Chief
 sent to M. Perier to know his pleasure :
 but the Natchez in the mean time assassi-
 nated the Tonicas, beginning with their
 Grand Chief ; and few of them escaped
 this treachery.

M. Perier, Commandant General, zealous for the service, neglected no means, whereby to discover in what part the Natchez had taken refuge. And after many enquiries, he was told, they had entirely quitted the East side of the Mississippi, doubtless to avoid the troublesome and dangerous visits of the Chactaws; and in order to be more concealed from the French, had retired to the West of the Mississippi, near the Silver Creek, about sixty leagues from the mouth of the Red River.

These advices were certain: But the Commandant General not thinking himself in a condition fit to attack them without succours, had applied for that purpose to the Court; and succours were accordingly sent him.

In the mean time the Company, who had been apprized of the misfortune at the Post of the Natchez, and the losses sustained by the war, gave up that Colony to the King, with the privileges annexed thereto. The Company at the same time ceded to the King all that belonged to them in that Colony, as fortresses, artillery, ammunition, warehouses, and plantations, with the Negroes belonging thereto. In consequence of which,

Commandant General, zealous, neglected no means, to discover in what part the Natchez were in what part the Natchez were. And after many inquiries, they had entirely discovered the side of the Mississippi, and the troublesome and warlike Chaftaws; and in consequence were concealed from the Natchez to the West of the Silver Creek, about the mouth of the Red

they were certain: But the Commandant General not thinking himself fit to attack them without succours, applied for that purpose; and succours were sent him.

The Company, who were sensible of the misfortune at Natchez, and the losses of the war, gave up that Colony with the privileges and the Company at the disposal to the King all that belonged in that Colony, as for the ammunition, warehouses, and the Negroes belonging. In consequence of which,

his Majesty sent one of his ships, commanded by M. de Forant, who brought with him M. de Salmont, Commissary-General of the Marine, and Inspector of Louisiana, in order to take possession of that Colony in the King's name.

M. Perier, who till then had been Commandant General of Louisiana for the West India Company, was now made Governor for the King; and had the satisfaction to see his brother arrive in one of the King's ships, commanded by M. Perier de Salvert, with the succours he demanded, which were an hundred and fifty soldiers of the marine. This Officer had the title of Lieutenant General of the Colony conferred upon him.

The Messrs. Perier set out with their army, in very favourable weather; and arrived at last, without obstruction, near to the retreat of the Natchez. To get to that place, they went up the Red River, then the Black River, and from thence up the Silver Creek, which communicates with a small Lake at no great distance from the fort, which the Natchez had built, in order to maintain their ground against the French.

The Natchez, struck with terror at the sight of a vigilant enemy, shut them-

selves up in their fort. Despair assumed the place of prudence, and they were at their wits end, on seeing the trenches gain ground on the fort : They equipped themselves like Warriors, and stained their bodies with different colours, in order to make their last efforts by a rally, which resembled a transport of rage more than the calmness of valour, to the terror, at first, of the soldiers.

The reception they met from our men, taught them, however, to keep themselves shut up in their fort ; and tho' the trench was almost finished, our Generals were impatient to have the mortars put in a condition to play on the place. At last they are set in battery ; when the third bomb happened to fall in the middle of the fort, the usual place of residence of the women and children, they set up a horrible screaming ; and the men, seized with grief at the cries of their wives and children, made the signal to capitulate.

The Natchez, after having demanded to capitulate, started difficulties, which occasioned messages to and fro till night, which they waited to avail themselves of, demanding till next day to settle the arti-

fort. Despair assumed
 silence, and they were at
 seeing the trenches gain
 rt : They equipped them-
 sors, and stained their bo-
 nt colours, in order to
 efforts by a sally, which
 sport of rage more than
 valour, to the terror, at
 bers.

they met from our men,
 ever, to keep themselves
 fort ; and tho' the trench
 hed, our Generals were
 re the mortars put in a
 y on the place. At last
 battery ; when the third
 to fall in the middle of
 al place of residence of
 children, they set up a
 ing ; and the men, seiz-
 the cries of their wives
 made the signal to capitu-

, after having demanded
 started difficulties, which
 ages to and fro till night,
 ted to avail themselves of,
 next day to settle the arti-

cles of capitulation. The night was grant-
 ed them, but being narrowly watched on
 the side next the gate, they could not ex-
 ecute the same project of escape, as in
 the war with M. de Loubois. However,
 they attempted it, by taking advantage of
 the obscurity of the night, and of the ap-
 parent stillness of the French : But they
 were discovered in time, the greatest part
 being constrained to retire into the fort.
 Some of them only happened to escape,
 who joined those that were out a hun-
 ting, and all together retired to the Chic-
 saws. The rest surrendered at discre-
 tion, among whom was the Grand Sun,
 with several Warriors, many women,
 young people, and children.

The French army re-embarked, and
 carried the Natchez as slaves to New-
 Orleans, where they were put in prison ;
 but afterwards, to avoid an infection, the
 women and children were disposed of in
 the King's plantation, and elsewhere ; a-
 mong these women was the female Sun,
 called the Stung-Arm, who then related
 all she had done, in order to save the
 French.

Some time after, these slaves were em-
 barked for St. Domingo, in order to root
 out that nation in the Colony ; which was

the only method of effecting it, as the few that escaped had not a tenth of the women necessary to recruit the nation. And thus that nation, the most conspicuous in the Colony, and most useful to the French, was destroyed.

The War with the Chicafaws was owing to their having received and adopted the Natchez: Tho' in this respect they acted only according to an inviolable usage and sacred custom, established among all the nations of North America; that when a nation weakened by war retires for shelter to another, who are willing to adopt them, and is pursued thither by their enemies, this is in effect to declare war against the nation adopting.

But M. de Biainville, whether displeased with this act of hospitality, or losing sight of this unalterable law, constantly prevailing among those nations, sent word to the Chicafaws, to give up the Natchez. In answer to his demand they alledged, that the Natchez having demanded to be incorporated with them, were accordingly received and adopted; so as now to constitute but one nation, or people, under the name of Chicafaws, that of the Natchez being entirely abolished. Besides,

of effecting it, as the
had not a tenth of the
to recruit the nation.
tion, the most conspicu-
, and most useful to the
oyed.

the Chicafaws was ow-
g received and adopted
' in this respect they
ing to an inviolable u-
custom, established a-
ons of North America;
n weakened by war re-
another, who are wil-
m, and is pursued thith-
es, this is in effect to
inst the nation adopt-

ville, whether displeaf-
of hospitality, or losing
erable law, constantly
those nations, sent word
to give up the Natchez.
demand they alledged,
having demanded to be
them, were according-
lopted; so as now to
e nation, or people, un-
Chicafaws, that of the
tirely abolished. Besides,

added they, had Biainville received our
enemies, should we go to demand them?
or, if we did, would they be given up?

Notwithstanding this answer, M. de
Biainville made warlike preparations a-
gainst the Chicafaws, sent off Captain le
Blanc, with six armed boats under his
command; one laden with gun-powder,
the rest with goods, the whole allotted
for the war against the Chicafaws; the
Captain at the same time carrying orders
to M. d' Artaguette, Commandant of the
Post of the Illinois, to prepare to set out
at the head of all the troops, inhabitants
and Indians, he could march from the Il-
linois, in order to be at the Chicafaws
the 10th of May following, as the Go-
vernor himself was to be there at the
same time.

The Chicafaws, apprized of the war-
like preparations of the French, resolved
to guard the Mississippi, imagining they
would be attacked on that side. In vain
they attempted to surprize M. le Blanc's
convoy, which got safe to the Arkansas,
where the gun-powder was left, for rea-
sons no one can surmise.

From thence he had no cross accident
to the Illinois, at which place he deliver-
ed the orders the Governor had dispatch-

ed for M. d' Artaguet; who finding a boat laden with gun-powder, designed for his Post, and for the service of the war intended against the Chicafaws, left at the Arkansas, sent off the same day a boat to fetch it up; which on its return was attacked and taken by a party of Chicafaws; who killed all but M. du Tiffenet, junior, and one Rosalie, whom they made slaves.

In the mean time, M. de Biainville went by sea to Fort Mobile, where the Grand Chief of the Chaftaws waited for him, in consequence of his engaging to join his Warriors with ours, in order to make war upon the Chicafaws, in consideration of a certain quantity of goods, part to be paid down directly, the rest at a certain time prefixed. The Governor, after this, returned to New Orleans, there to wait the opening of the campaign.

M. de Biainville, on his return, made preparations against his own departure, and that of the army, consisting of regular troops, some inhabitants and free Negroes, and some slaves, all which set out from New Orleans for Mobile; where on the 10th of March, 1736, the army, together with the Chaftaws, was assembled; and where they rested till the 2d

agnette ; who finding a
un-powder, designed for
the service of the war
the Chicafaws, left at
nt off the same day a
p ; which on its return
d taken by a party of
o killed all but M. du
and one Rosalie, whom

time, M. de Biainville
ort Mobile, where the
the Chactaws waited for
ce of his engaging to
with ours, in order to
the Chicafaws, in consi-
tain quantity of goods,
wn directly, the rest at a
ted. The Governor, af-
to New Orleans, there
ng of the campaign.

le, on his return, made
st his own departure,
my, consisting of regu-
nhabitants and free Ne-
aves, all which set out
as for Mobile ; where
arch, 1736, the army,
Chactaws, was assen-
they rested till the 2d

of April, when they began their march ;
those from New Orleans taking their route
by the river Mobile, in thirty large boats
and as many pettyaugers ; the Indians by
land, marching along the east bank of that
river ; and making but short marches, they
arrived at Tombecbec on the 20th of
April, where M. de Biainville caused a
fort to be built : Here he gave the Chac-
taws the rest of the goods due to them,
and did not set out from thence till the
4th of May. All this time was taken up
with a Council of War, held on four sol-
diers, French and Swiss, who had laid a
scheme to kill the Commandant and gar-
rison, to carry off M. Tiffenet and Rosa-
lie, who had happily made their escape
from the Chicafaws, and taken refuge in
the fort, and to put them again into the
hands of the enemy, in order to be bet-
ter received by them ; and to assist, and
shew them how to make a proper defence
against the French, and from thence to
go over to the English of Carolina.

From the 4th of May, on which the
army set out from Tombecbec, they took
twenty days to come to the landing-place,
After landing, they built a very extensive
inclosure of palisadoes, with a shed, as a

cover for the goods and ammunition. There the army passed the night. On the 25th powder and ball were given out to the soldiers, and inhabitants, the sick with some raw soldiers being left to guard this old fort of fort.

From this place to the fort of the Chicafaws are seven leagues : This day they marched five leagues and a half in two columns and in file, across woods. On the wings marched the Chaftaws, to the number of twelve hundred at least, commanded by their Grand Chief. In the evening they encamped in a meadow with wood.

On the 26th of May they marched to the enemy's fort, across thin woods ; and with water up to the waist, passed over a rivulet, which traverses a small wood ; on coming out of which, they entered a fine plain : In this plain stood the fort of the Chicafaws, with a village defended by it. This fort is situate on an eminence, with an easy ascent ; around it stood several huts, and at a greater distance towards the bottom, other huts, which appeared to have been put in a state of defence : Quite close to the fort ran a little brook, which watered a part of the plain.

(70)

goods and ammunition.
passed the night. On the
ball were given out to
inhabitants, the sick with
rs being left to guard this

ce to the fort of the Chic-
leagues : This day they
agues and a half in two
file, across woods. On
hed the Chaftaws, to the
ve hundred at least, com-
r Grand Chief. In the
camped in a meadow with

of May they marched to
t, across thin woods ; and
to the waist, passed over a
traverses a small wood ; on
which, they entered a fine
plain stood the fort of the
r a village defended by it.
ate on an eminence, with
around it stood several
greater distance towards
er huts, which appeared
it in a state of defence :
the fort ran a little brook,
a part of the plain.

The Chaftaws no sooner espied the en-
emy's fort, than they rent the air with
their death-cries, and instantly flew to
the fort : But their ardour flagged at a
carabin-shot from the place. The French
marched in good order, and got beyond a
small wood, which they left in their rear,
within cannon-shot of the enemy's fort,
where an English flag was seen flying.
At the same time four Englishmen, com-
ing from the huts, were seen to go up
the ascent, and enter the fort, where their
flag was set up.

Upon this, it was imagined, they
would be summoned to quit the enemy's
fort, and to surrender, as would in like
manner the Chicafaws ; But nothing of
this was once proposed. The General
gave orders to the Majors to form large
detachments of each of their corps, in or-
der to go and take the enemy's fort.
These orders were in part executed :
Three large detachments were made ;
namely, one of grenadiers, one of soldiers,
and another of militia, or trainbands ;
who, to the number of twelve hundred
men advanced with ardour towards the
enemy's fort, crying out aloud several
times, Vive le Roi, as if already masters
of the place ; which, doubtless, they im-

aged to carry sword in hand ; for in the whole army there was not a single iron tool to remove the earth, and form the attacks.

The rest of the army marched in battle-array, ten men deep ; mounted the eminence whereon the fort stood, and, being come there, set fire to some huts, with wild-fire thrown at the ends of darts ; but the smoke stifled the army.

The regular troops marched in front, and the militia, or train-bands, in rear, according to rule. These train-bands made a quarter turn to right and left, with the intent to go and invest the place. But M. de Jufan, Aid major of the troops, stopt short their ardour, and sent them to their proper post, reserving for his own corps the glory of carrying the place, which continued to make a brisk defence. Biainville remained at the quarters of reserve ; where he observed what would be the issue of the attack, than which none could be more disadvantageous.

Both the regulars and inhabitants, or trainbands gave instances of the greatest valour : But what could they do, open and exposed as they were, against a fort, whose stakes or wooden posts were a fathom in compass, and their joinings a-

y sword in hand ; for in
y there was not a single i-
move the earth, and form

the army marched in bat-
men deep ; mounted the e-
on the fort flood, and, be-
e, set fire to some huts, with
own at the ends of darts ; but
ed the army.

r troops marched in front,
, or train-bands, in rear,
le. These train-bands made
to right and left, with the
ad invest the place. But M.
major of the troops, sto-
our, and sent them to their
eserving for his own corps
arrying the place, which
make a brisk defence. Biain-
at the quarters of reserve ;
erved what would be the
ack, than which none could
vantageous.

regulars and inhabitants, or
ve instances of the greatest
what could they do, open
s they were, against a fort,
or wooden posts were a fa-
pafs, and their joinings a-

gain lined with other posts, almost as big.
From this fort, which was well garrisoned,
issued a shower of balls ; which would
have mowed down at least half the assail-
ants, if directed by men, who knew how
to fire. The enemy were under cover
from all the attacks of the French, and
could have defended themselves by their
loop-holes. Besides, they formed a gal-
lery of flat palisadoes quite round, cover-
ed with earth, which screened it from the
fire of grenadiers. In this manner the
troops lavished their ammunition against
the wooden posts, or stakes, of the ene-
my's fort, without any other effect, than
having thirty-two men killed, and almost
seventy wounded ; which last were car-
ried to the body of reserve ; from whence
the General, seeing the bad success of
the attack, ordered to beat the retreat,
and sent a large detachment to favour it.
It was now five in the evening, and the
attack had been begun at half an hour af-
ter one. The troops rejoined the body of
the army, without being able to carry off
their dead, which were left on the field
of battle, exposed to the rage of the ene-
my.

After taking some refreshment, they
directly fortified themselves, by felling

trees, in order to pass the night secure from the insults of the enemy, by being carefully on their guard. Next day it was observed, the enemy had availed themselves of that night to demolish some huts, where the French, during the attack, had put themselves under cover, in order from thence to batter the fort.

On the 27th, the day after the attack, the army began its march, and lay at a league from the enemy. The day following, at a league from the landing place, whither they arrived next day. The French embarked for Fort Mobile, and from thence for the Capital, from which each returned to his own home.

A little time after, a serjeant of the garrison of the Illinois arrived at New Orleans, who reported, that, in consequence of the General's orders, M. d' Artaguette had taken his measures so well, that on the 9th of May he arrived with his men near the Chickasaws, sent out scouts to discover the arrival of the French army; which he continued to do till the 20th: That the Indians in alliance, hearing no accounts of the French, wanted either to return home, or to attack the Chickasaws; which last M. d' Artaguette resolved upon, on the 21st, with pretty good success at

to pass the night secure
ts of the enemy, by being
their guard. Next day it
the enemy had availed them-
night to demolish some
the French, during the at-
themselves under cover, in
nce to batter the fort.

, the day after the attack,
n its march, and lay at a
the enemy. The day fol-
gue from the landing place,
rived next day. The French
Fort Mobile, and from
Capital, from which each
own home.

e after, a serjeant of the
Illinois arrived at New Or-
ported, that, in consequence
s orders, M. d' Artaguette
measures so well, that on
he arrived with his men
saws, sent out courts to dis-
al of the French army;
nued to do till the 20th:
s in alliance, hearing no
French, wanted either to
to attack the Chicafaws;
Artaguette resolved upon,
with pretty good success at

first, having forced the enemy to quit
their village and fort : That he then at-
tacked another village with the same suc-
cess; but that, pursuing the runaways, M.
d' Artaguette had received two wounds,
which the Indians finding, resolved to a-
bandon that Commandant, with forty-six
soldiers and two serjeants, who defended
their Commandant all that day, but were
at last obliged to surrender; that they
were well used by the enemy, who under-
standing that the French were in their
country, prevailed on M. d' Artaguette to
write to the General; but that this depu-
tation having had no success, and learn-
ing that the French were retired, and
despairing of any ransom for their slaves,
put them to death by a slow fire. The
serjeant added, he had the happiness to fall
into the hands of a good master, who fa-
voured his escape to Mobile.

M. de Biainville, desirous to take ven-
geance of the Chicafaws, wrote to France
for succours, which the Court sent, order-
ing also the Colony of Canada to send
succours. In the mean time M. de Biain-
ville sent off a large detachment for the
river St. Francis, in order to build a fort
there, called also St. Francis.

The Squadron, which brought the succours from France being arrived, they set out, by going up the Mississippi, for the fort that had been just built. This army consisted of Marines, of the troops of the Colony, of several Inhabitants, many Negroes, and some Indians, our allies ; and being assembled in this place, took water again, and still proceeded up the Mississippi to a little river called Margot, near the Cliffs called Prud'homme, and there the whole army landed. They encamped on a fine plain, at the foot of a hill, about fifteen leagues from the enemy, fortified themselves by way of precaution, and built in the fort a house for the Commandant, some cazerns, and a warehouse for goods. This fort was called Assumption, from the day on which they landed.

They had waggons and sledges made, and the roads cleared for transporting cannon, ammunition, and other necessities for forming a regular siege. There and then it was the succours from Canada arrived, consisting of French, Iroquois, Hurons, Epifingles, Algonquins, and other nations : And soon after arrived the new Commandant of the Illinois, with the garrison, inhabitants, and neighbouring Indians, all that he could bring together, with a great number of horses.

on, which brought the succour being arrived, they set up the Mississippi, for the fort just built. This army consisted of the troops of the regulars, of the troops of the regular Inhabitants, many Neutral Indians, our allies ; and in this place, took water. They proceeded up the Mississippi, to a place called Margot, near the mouth of the Red River, and there they encamped on a point of a hill, about fifteen miles from the enemy, fortified by way of precaution, and built a house for the Commandant, and a warehouse for the stores, which was called Assumption, which they landed. They had gunnys and sledges made, and were prepared for transporting cannon, and other necessaries for a regular siege. There and from Canada arrived French, Iroquois, Huron, Algonquins, and other Indians, who after arrived the new Illinois, with the regulars, and neighbouring Indians could bring together, a number of horses.

This formidable army, consisting of so many different nations, the greatest ever seen, and perhaps that ever will be seen, in those parts, remained in this camp without undertaking any thing, from the month of August 1739, to the March following. Provisions, which at first were in great plenty, came at last to be so scarce, that they were obliged to eat the horses which were to draw the artillery, ammunition, and provisions. Afterwards sickness raged in the army. M. de Blainville, who hitherto had attempted nothing against the Chickasaws, resolved to have recourse to mild methods. He therefore detached, about the 15th of March, the company of Cadets with their Captain, M. de Celaron, their Lieutenant, M. de St. Laurent, and the Indians, who came with them from Canada, against the Chickasaws, with orders to offer peace to them in his name, if they sued for it.

What the General had foreseen, failed not to happen. As soon as the Chickasaws saw the French, followed by the Indians of Canada, they doubted not the least, but the rest of that numerous army would soon follow : And they no sooner saw them approach, but they made signals of

peace, and came out of their fort in the most humble manner, exposing themselves to all the consequences that might ensue, in order to obtain peace. They solemnly protested that they actually were, and would continue to be inviolable friends of the French; that it was the English, who prevailed upon them to act in this manner; but that they had fallen out with them on this account, and at that very time had two of that nation whom they made slaves; and that the French might go and see whether they spoke the truth.

M. de St. Laurent asked to go, and accordingly went with a young slave: But he might have had reason to have repented it, had not the men been more prudent than the women, who demanded the head of the Frenchman: But the men, after consulting together, were resolved to save him, in order to obtain peace of the French, on giving up the two Englishmen. The women risk scarce any thing near so much as the men; these last are either slain in battle, or put to death by their enemies; whereas the women at worst are but slaves; and they all perfectly well know, that the Indian women are far better off when slaves to the French, than if

ne out of their fort in the manner, exposing themselves to consequences that might ensue, to obtain peace. They solemnly declared that they actually were, and were to be inviolable friends, that it was the English, upon whom they had fallen out, that they had fallen out, upon this account, and at that time two of that nation whom they saw; and that the French should see whether they spoke

Laurent asked to go, and went with a young slave: But he had reason to have repented, when he had seen more prudent men, who demanded the ransom of the Englishman: But the men, assembled together, were resolved to order to obtain peace of the Englishmen, by giving up the two Englishmen. It is scarce any thing near so common; these last are either put to death by their enemies, as the women at worst are, and they all perfectly well as the Indian women are far better to the French, than if

married at home. M. de St. Laurent, highly pleased with this discovery, promised them peace in the name of M. de Biainville and of all the French: After these assurances, they went all in a body out of the fort, to present the Pipe to M. de Celaron, who accepted it, and repeated the same promise.

In a few days after, he set out with a great company of Chicasaws deputed to carry the Pipe to the French General, and deliver up the two Englishmen. When they came before M. de Biainville, they fell prostrate at his feet, and made him the same protestations of fidelity and friendship, as they had already made to M. de Celaron; threw the blame on the English; said they were entirely fallen out with them and had taken, these two, and put them in his hands, as enemies. They protested, in the most solemn manner, they would for ever be friends of the French and of their friends, and enemies of their enemies; in fine, that they would make war on the English, if it was thought proper, in order to shew, that they renounced them as traitors.

Thus ended the war with the Chicasaws, about the beginning of April 1740. M. de Biainville dismissed the

auxiliaries, after making them presents ; razed the Fort Assinption, thought to be no longer necessary, and embarked with his whole army ; and in passing down, caused the Fort St. Francis to be demolished, as it was now become useless; and he repaired to the Capital, after an absence of more than ten months.

Some years after, the French had disputes with a part of the Chaftaws, who followed the interests of the Red-Shoe, a Prince of that nation, who in the first expedition against the Chicafaws, had some disputes with the French. This Indian, more insolent than any one of his nation, took a pretext to break out, and commit several hostilities against the French. M. de Vandreuil, then Governor of Louisiana, being apprized of this, and of the occasion thereof, strictly forbade the French to frequent that nation, and to truck with them any arms or ammunition, in order to put a stop to that disorder in a short time, and without drawing the sword.

M. de Vandreuil, after taking these precautions, sent to demand of the Grand Chief of the whole nation, whether, like the Red-Shoe, he was also displeased with the French. He made answer, he was their friend : But that the Red-Shoe,

making them presents ;
 assumption, thought to be
 ery, and embarked with
 and in passing down,
 St. Francis to be demol-
 now become uselefs; and
 the Capital, after an ab-
 an ten months.

ter, the French had dif-
 of the Chactaws, who
 rests of the Red-Shoe, a
 tion; who in the first ex-
 the Chicafaws, had some
 French. This Indian,
 n any one of his nation,
 o break out, and commit
 against the French. M.
 en Governor of Louifia-
 ed of this, and of the oc-
 ictly forbid the French
 nation, and to truck with
 r ammunition, in order
 that diforder in a short
 ut drawing the fword.

reuil, after taking these
 to demand of the Grand
 ole nation, whether, like
 e was also displeased with
 e made answer, he was
 ut that the Red-Shoe,

was a young man, without understanding.
 Having returned this answer, they sent
 him a present: But he was greatly fur-
 prised to find neither arms, powder, nor
 ball in this present, at a time when they
 were friends as before. This manner of
 proceeding, joined to the prohibition
 made of trucking with them arms or am-
 munition, heightened their surprize, and
 put them on having an explanation on this
 head with the Governor; who made an-
 swer, that neither arms nor ammunition
 would be trucked with them, as long as
 the Red-Shoe had no more understand-
 ing; that they would not fail, as being
 brethren, to share a good part of the am-
 munition and arms with the Warriors of
 the Red-Shoe. This answer put them
 on remonstrating to the Village that in-
 sulted us; told them, if they did not in-
 stantly make peace with the French, they
 would themselves make war upon them.
 This threatening declaration made them
 sue for peace with the French, who were
 not in a condition to maintain a war a-
 gainst a nation so numerous.

On the 3d. of November 1762, was
 signed a treaty between the Crowns of
 France and Spain by which the former
 ceded Louisiana to the latter. It was a

secret one, and the inhabitants of that Colony were not apprized of it till the 21st. of April 1764, and it was not till the 28 of February 1766 that Don Ulloa arrived at New Orleans, with only eighty men to take possession of the new territory of his Catholic Majesty. It had been expected that the country would be surrendered on his landing. The contrary however happened. Orders continued to be given in the French King's name; justice was administered by his officers; and the troops remained in the fort on which the white flag was kept waving; the French Governor preserved the command. The inhabitants were expressly averse to the cession, they could not brook the idea of passing under the Spanish yoke, and they saw with pleasure that Don Ulloa's arrival had produced no change in the administration of government. They were induced to believe that Charles III. had not finally determined to accept the cession and that his emissary had come only to view the country and sound the disposition of its inhabitants. They were under this pleasing illusion when an order from the King of Spain arrived forbidding any intercourse between Louisiana and the countries that offered a market for its produce.

not the inhabitants of that not apprized of it till the 1764, and it was not till January 1765 that Don Ulloa w Orleans, with only eighty possession of the new territory. It had been the country would be furnished. The contrary opened. Orders continued to the French King's name; just administered by his officers; and remained in the fort on which flag was kept waving; the governor preserved the command. The people were expressly averse to they could not brook the yoke under the Spanish yoke, with pleasure that Don Ulloa had produced no change in the government. They determined to believe that Charles III. had determined to accept the that his emissary had come the country and found the of its inhabitants. They were pleasing illusion when an order of the King of Spain arrived for intercourse between Louisiana countries that offered a marriage.

This new restraint was the forerunner of numberless instances of oppression. Orders of monopolies were established repeated acts of arbitrary authority followed. The people felt them more strongly from the circumstance of its appearing to proceed from their former governor over whose mind Don Ulloa had acquired the most absolute empire. Despair prevailed among them; they were tempted to cross the Mississippi and accept the offers of the English who were anxious for their coming to settle among them. A dear and sacred tie bound them to their country; and they chose rather to solicit a decree from the King's council at New Orleans, ordering Don Ulloa's departure and that the surrender of the colony should be delayed till the petition of the colonists might reach their old Sovereign. The council pronounced the decree on the 28th October 1768, the Spaniards peaceably departed in the frigate, which had brought them. This crisis lasted three days, yet no tumult, no noise was heard in New Orleans. As soon as it was over the people returned to their ordinary occupations, hoping that their conduct would not be disapproved by the monarch under whom they were so anxious to live.

They were disappointed; their deputies did not reach Europe, till six weeks after Don Ulloa. They found the cabinet of Versailles either apparently or really dissatisfied with what had happened. The nation, however, manifested an interest for the fate of those men who had disobeyed through the excess of their attachment for their mother country. The court was induced to share this sentiment; but this tardy compassion was of no avail. The court of Madrid on the arrival of Don Ulloa, had dispatched General O'Reilly for the island of Cuba, where he took 3000 men and arrived in the Mississippi in the latter part of July 1766.

An inexpressible rage prevailed among the inhabitants; they deprecated the vengeance of heaven on a country who had sold part of its members to a Prince, who had meanly accepted the cession of a colony, the people of which were so unwilling to bear his yoke. They talked of opposing the landing of the Spaniards, of burning their ships. Nothing would have been easier, and the consequences of the attempt would not, in case of its failure have been very dangerous. They might have hoped to keep themselves into an independant republic. Had France and

appointed; their deputies
Europe, till six weeks af-

They found the cabinet
ther apparently or really
what had happened. The
r, manifested an interest
those men who had diso-

the excess of their attach-
mother country. The
ed to share this sentiment;
compassion was of no avail.
Madrid on the arrival of
d dispatched General O'-
nd of Cuba, where he took
arrived in the Mississippi
rt of July 1766.

ible rage prevailed among
; they deprecated the ven-
en on a country who had
members to a Prince, who
repted the cession of a co-
e of which were so unwill-
s yoke. They talked of
nding of the Spaniards, of
hips. Nothing would have
d the consequences of the
not, in case of its failure
dangerous. They might
keep themselves into an in-
public. Had France and

Spain united their forces against them,
they might have sought protection from
Great Britain; if she had wanted either the
power or the inclination to yield it, they
might as their last resource have gone on
the eastern shore of the river, with their
slaves, their cattle, their moveables.

During this suspense the promises of
the Spanish General, the supplications of
Aubry, the weak French Governor, whose
want of firmness had occasioned the mis-
fortune of the country, the vehement
speeches of an eloquent and beloved ma-
gistrate caused the fermentation to subside.
The approach of the fleet was not oppo-
sed, it reached the fort of New Orleans
on the 17th of August. On the next day,
the inhabitants were released from their
allegiance to their former King, posses-
sion was taken of the country in Charles
III's name and those who were willing to
live under his laws took an oath to obey
him.

All was soon over, but vengeance was
yet unsatisfied. Victims were looked
for. Twelve were selected among the
most respectable inhabitants, attached to
the army, magistracy and marine, six of
them paid with their blood the considera-
tion they had enjoyed. The rest, less hap-
I

py perhaps, went to languish in the dungeons of the Havannah, or the mines of South-America.

Terrified by the sad conclusion of this tragedy, most of the merchants of New Orleans carried elsewhere their industry and their funds. Despair drove many of the planters from their settlements. The remainder itaid to pine in oppression and misery. Wretches who could pity you? You had honest and virtuous magistrates who watched in the day for your felicity, for your security at night, and for your welfare during the whole year. You had near you fellow citizens who loved and succoured you; they were bound to you by the most sacred ties: they were your fathers, your brothers, your children, and you stood looking while they were led to the scaffold, hurried in chains on board of the ships.

The crown of Spain remained in possession of Louisiana ever since.

In the year 1793 a treaty was concluded at San Lorenzo el real, between the United States and the king of Spain, by which the western boundary of their territory, which separates them from Louisiana in the middle of the channel, or bed of the Mississippi, from the Northern bound-

ent to languish in the dun-
geons of Savannah, or the mines of

the sad conclusion of this tra-
gey the merchants of New Or-
leans where their industry and
Despair drove many of the
their settlements. The re-
sult in oppression and mi-
series who could pity you? You
virtuous magistrates who
day for your felicity, for
night, and for your wel-
fare whole year. You had
w citizens who loved and
they were bound to you by
ties : they were your fa-
thers, your children, and
ing while they were led to
carried in chains on board
.....

of Spain remained in
Louisiana ever since.

1795 a treaty was conclud-
renzo el real, between the
and the king of Spain, by
tern boundary of their ter-
separates them from Louisi-
middle of the channel, or bed
pi, from the Northern bound-

ary of the said States, to the completion
of the thirty first degree of latitude north
of the Equator : and his catholic majesty
likewise agreed that the navigation of the
said river in its whole breadth from its
source to the Ocean should be free only
to his subjects, and the citizens of the U-
nited States, unless he should grant the
privilege to the subjects of the U-
nited States by Spanish Convention.

It was further stipulated that his ma-
jesty would permit the citizens of the U-
nited States, for the space of three years,
to deposit their merchandizes and effects,
in the port of New Orleans, and to export
them from thence without paying any
other duty than a fair price for the hire
of the stores ; and the king further pro-
mised either to continue that permission,
or assign to them, on another part of
the banks of the Mississippi, another equi-
valent settlement.

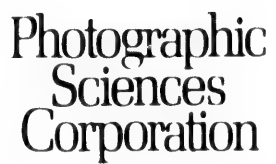
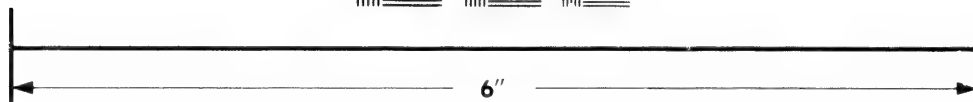
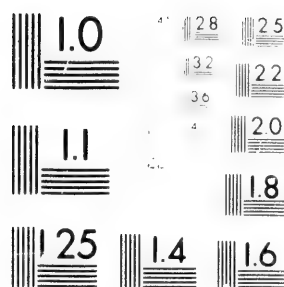
During the latter part of the year 1802
the Intendant of New-Orleans, thought
himself bound to forbear allowing the
citizens of the United States the privi-
ledge of a deposit in that city, which they
had until then enjoyed, the time which his
instructions mentioned being expired. A
general alarm was soon spread through-

out the United States. Congress were then in session, and prudence dictated to them the propriety of averting a similar inconvenience for the future, by obtaining the sovereignty and territory of Louisiana. The President coincided in this opinion. The enemies of the administration thought they foresaw in this incident a rock on which its popularity was to be wrecked, they highly blamed the measure and charged the favourers of it with meanness and pusillanimity. They wished the nation would launch into a war: and advised the immediate capture of New Orleans. The people, however, did not side with them, and confiding in the wisdom and integrity of those they had lately placed at the helm of public affairs, patiently waited the issue of this important event. Congress in pursuance of the advice of a committee, who sat and made their reports in secret, voted two millions of dollars to enable the President to enter into a treaty for the contemplated acquisition, and adjourned.

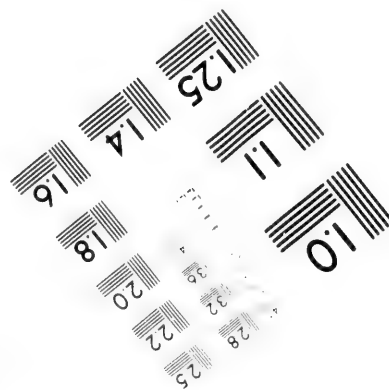
The President employed for this purpose Robert R. Livingston, of New York, the Minister of the United States at Paris, and sent James Monroe, of Virginia, as an envoy extraordinary on the same business.

States. Congress were then
 prudence dictated to them
 of averting a similar incon-
 the future, by obtaining the
 and territory of Louisiana.
 coincided in this opinion.
 of the administration thought
 in this incident a rock on
 ularity was to be wrecked,
 blamed the measure and
 vourers of it with meanness
 nity. They wished the na-
 unch into a war: and advi-
 diate capture of New Or-
 eople, however, did not side
 d confiding in the wisdom
 of those they had lately pla-
 m of public affairs, patiently
 so of this important event.
 pursuance of the advice of a
 ho sat and made their re-
 voted two millions of dol-
 the President to enter into a
 contemplated acquisition,
 d.
 ent employed for this pur-
 . Livingston, of New York,
 f the United States at Paris,
 es Monroe, of Virginia, as
 ordinary on the same bu-





23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1984

n
n
e
t.
it
in
l,
ul
fa
a-
i-
e-
de
ni
a-
ly
it
a
no-
al-
on
it,
it-
it,
is,
as
u-

The minority of Congress on their re-
turn endeavoured to estrange the affec-
tions and confidence of the people by
representing the conduct as productive of
the most alarming consequences and as if
it had been adopted thro' a pusillanimous
devotion to the French Government. The
appropriation of two millions, thus pla-
ced in the power of the President, was
held out as a measure which deserved the
execration of good men: The motive that
suggested it was concealed, and hints
were thrown out that a corrupt one had
dictated it.

The news of the success of our minis-
ters in France soon reached America.
The acquisition of Louisiana evinced the
propriety of the measures that had been
pursued.

The election however which followed
soon after evinced that the people were
not dupes of such intrigues and the friends
of the administration were almost every
where chosen.

The President issued a proclamation for
a meeting of Congress on the 17th of Oc-
tober. They met on that day and the
Senate on the 21st advised a ratification
of the Convention entered into at Paris on
the 30th day of April 1803, relative to
the purchase of Louisiana.

The President lost no time, the convention was ratified, and an exchange of the ratifications accordingly took place a few days after : Citizen Pichon the charge des affairs of the French Government, near that of the United States, having received instructions for the purpose.

A proclamation was immediately issued announcing to the people of the United States that their title to a territory of so much importance was at last completed. The enemies of the Administration, vexed by seeing an event, which they had foretold and which they fondly hoped, would be the means of depriving the péron, who had lately been called to the chief magistracy of the union, of the confidence of the people, spread a report which was calculated to allay the public joy. They gave out that the American negociators had been the dupe of the intrigues of the French cabinet, that the French could not convey, for they had not themselves, any right to the country they had disposed of—that the Spanish officers in Louisiana would not suffer theicans to enter that province.

Congress passed an act, authorising the President of the United States to take

President lost no time, the convention was ratified, and an exchange of ratifications accordingly took place. After : Citizen Pichon the affairs of the French Government that of the United States, having instructions for the purpose. A proclamation was immediately issued to the people of the United States their title to a territory of importance was at last completed. The Administration, vexed by an event, which they had not which they fondly hoped, the means of depriving the people who had lately been called to the magistracy of the union, of the confidence of the people, spread a report calculated to allay the public anxiety. It gave out that the American people had been the dupe of the influence of the French cabinet, that they could not convey, for they had lost, any right to the country disposed of—that the Spanish Government would not suffer the United States to enter that province. Congress passed an act, authorising the President of the United States to take

possession of the new acquisition. Mr. Jefferson accordingly appointed Governor William C. C. Claiborne, and General James Wilkinson commissioners for that purpose, he gave orders for a sufficient number of troops and some of the militia to be in readiness to attend those gentlemen, that they might be able to overcome the difficulties which some affected to believe would attend their mission.

These apprehensions, however, were soon dissipated; accounts, reached the seat of government of the United States early in January 1804, of the surrender of the city of New-Orleans and the province of Louisiana, by the officers of the Spanish King to Citizen Laussat, the French Commissary*.

Governor Claiborne and Gen. Wilkinson took possession on the 19th of December when the former immediately issued a proclamation, announcing the extinction both of the Spanish and French authority over the province, and the establishment of that of the United States—giving assurance, that the inhabitants

* See the particulars of his taking possession and his proclamation in the appendix.

should be incorporated in the Union, and admitted to all the rights, &c. of citizens, and requiring allegiance to the United States and obedience to the laws and authorities of the same. General Wilkinson also issued orders to his army, requiring vigorous subordination and discipline, and such conduct as would inspire the people of Louisiana with confidence in their new relations; and that they might enjoy full security in their persons and property.*

On the 28th of January, the acquisition of Louisiana was celebrated in Washington City, by a numerous company. A most superb dinner was given by the Members of Congress to the President of the United States, the Vice-President, the heads of Departments, and the other Officers of Government. The President was escorted from his own house to the place of entertainment by Members of both Houses, the Brigadier General, and the Colonel of the Washington Militia, and the Officers of Government generally. His approach was announced by a discharge of artillery from the Hill, and he

* See the particulars of their taking possession in the appendix.

be incorporated in the Union, and
 ed to all the rights, &c. of citizens,
 quiring allegiance to the United
 and obedience to the laws and au-
 s of the same. General Wilkin-
 issued orders to his army, requi-
 sorious subordination and discipline,
 h conduct as would inspire the
 of Louisiana with confidence in
 w relations; and that they might
 ull security in their persons and

the 28th of January, the acqui-
 sition of Louisiana was celebrated in Wash-
 ington City, by a numerous company.
 A superb dinner was given by the
 President of Congress to the President of
 the United States, the Vice-President,
 the Secretaries of Departments, and the other
 officers of Government. The President
 dined from his own house to the
 entertainment by Members of
 Congress, the Brigadier General, and
 the Colonel of the Washington Militia,
 officers of Government generally,
 each was announced by a dis-
 tinct artillery from the Hill, and he

the particulars of their taking pos-
 session of the appendix.

was received at the door by the President
 and Vice-Presidents of the day, and wel-
 comed by a full band of Music playing
 "Jefferson's March." The company,
 consisting of about one hundred, sat down
 to dinner at 5 o'clock; Gen. Smith presi-
 ded, and Mr. Nicholson and Mr. Var-
 num acted as Vice-Presidents.

On no occasion have the same number
 of countenances exhibited more real sa-
 tisfaction, as none ever offered itself upon
 which mutual congratulation could be
 more sincere, or mutual good will more
 generally felt. An assemblage so numer-
 ous, to celebrate an event, at once so
 glorious and so happy, may not occur
 again for centuries to come. The re-
 duction of a fortress which has cost the
 lives of thousands, the conquest of a
 town, in which the widow, the orphan,
 and the helpless virgin have had ample
 cause to heap curses on the heads of the
 conquerors, have too often furnished oc-
 casion for joy and festivity. But what
 must have been the sensations of those
 who were now assembled, when they re-
 flected, that without exciting the an-
 guish of one heart, they had extended
 the blessings of liberty to an hundred

(94)

thousand beings who were added to the population of their country; and by means untainted with the blood of a single victim, they had acquired almost a new world, and had laid the foundation for the happiness of millions yet unborn!

(94)

and beings who were added to the
population of their country; and by means
of the blood of a single vic-
tim they had acquired almost a new
and had laid the foundation for
the happiness of millions yet unborn!

AN ACCOUNT
OF
LOUISIANA.

PART II.

Topography.

LOUISIANA, says Dupratz, who wrote in 1759, is that part of North America, which is bounded on the South by the Gulf of Mexico ; on the East by Carolina, an English Colony, and by a part of Canada ; on the West, by New Mexico ; and on the North, in part by Canada ; in part it extends, without any assignable bounds, to the *Terræ Incognitæ*, adjoining to Hudson's Bay*. Its breadth is about two hundred leagues†, extending

* By the Charter granted by Louis XIV. to M. Crozat, Louisiana extends only "from the edge of the sea as far as the Illinois," which is not above half the extent assigned by our Author.

† According to the best Maps and Accounts extant, the distance from the Mississippi to the Mountains of New Mexico is about nine hundred miles, and from the Mississippi to the Atlantic Ocean about six hundred, reckoning sixty miles to a degree, and in a straight line.

between the Spanish and English settlements; its length undetermined, as being altogether unknown. However, the source of the Mississippi will afford us some light on this head.

The Climate of Louisiana varies in proportion as it extends northward: All that can be said of it in general is, that its southern parts are not so scorching as those of Africa in the same latitude; and that the northern parts are colder than the corresponding parts of Europe. New Orleans, which lies in Lat. 30° , as do the more northerly coasts of Barbary and Egypt, enjoys the same temperature of climate as Languedoc. Two degrees higher up, at the Natchez the climate is far milder than at New Orleans, the country lying higher: And at the Illinois, which is between 45° and 46° , the summer is in no respect hotter than at Rochelle; but we find the frosts harder, and a more plentiful fall of snow. This difference of climate from that of Africa and Europe, I ascribe to two causes: The first is, the number of woods, which, tho' scattered up and down, cover the face of this country: The second, the great number of rivers. The former prevent the sun from warming the earth; and the latter diffuse a great degree

the Spanish and English settle-
ment length undetermined, as being
unknown. However, the source
of it in general is, that its south-
west will afford us some light
and.

Climate of Louisiana varies in pro-
portion to its extent northward : All that
of it in general is, that its south-
west are not so scorching as those of
the same latitude ; and that the
parts are colder than the corres-
ponding parts of Europe. New Orleans,
in Lat. 30 °, as do the more
coasts of Barbary and Egypt,
same temperature of climate as
two degrees higher up, at
the climate is far milder than
New Orleans, the country lying high-
er than the Illinois, which is between
36 °, the summer is in no res-
pect than at Rochelle ; but we find
warmer, and a more plentiful fall
This difference of climate from
Africa and Europe, I ascribe to
three : The first is, the number of
rivers, tho' scattered up and down,
the force of this country : The se-
cond is, the great number of rivers. The
third is, the sun from warming the
land, the latter diffuse a great degree

of humidity : Not to mention the con-
tiguity of this country with those to the
northward ; from which it follows that
the winds blowing from that quarter are
much colder, than if they traversed the
sea in their course. For it is well known,
that the air is never so hot, and never so
cold at sea, as on land.

We ought not therefore to be surpris-
ed, if in the southern part of Louisiana,
a North wind blights people in summer
to be warmer clothed ; or if in winter a
South wind admits of a lighter dress ; as
naturally owing, at the one time, to the
dryness of the wind, at the other, to the
proximity of the Equator.

Few days pass in Louisiana without
seeing the sun. The rain pours down
there in sudden heavy showers, which do
not last long, but disappear in half an
hour, perhaps. The dews are plentiful,
advantageously supplying the place of
rain.

We may therefore well imagine, that
the air is perfectly good there ; the blood
is pure ; the people are healthy ; subject
to few diseases in the vigour of life, and
without decrepitude in old age, which
they carry to a far greater length than in
France. People live to a long and agree-

able old age in Louisiana, if they are but sober and temperate.

This country is extremely well watered, but much more so in some places than in others. The Mississippi divides this Colony from North to South into two parts almost equal. The first discovery of this river by the way of Canada, called it Colbert, in honour of that great Minister. By some savages of the North it is called Meaſſi-Chaſſipi, which literally denotes, the ancient Father of Rivers, of which the French have, by corruption, formed Miſſiſſippi. Other Indians, eſpecially thoſe lower down the river, call it Balbancha; and at laſt the French have given it the name of St. Louis.

Several travellers have in vain attempted to go up to its ſource; which, however, is well known, whatever ſome authors, miſinformed, may alledge to the contrary. We here ſubjoin the accounts that may be moſt depended upon.

M. de Charleville, a Canadian, and a relation of M. de Biainville, Commandant General of this Colony, told me, that at the time of the ſettlement of the French, curioſity alone had led him to go up this river to its ſources; that for this end, he fitted out a canoe, made of the bark of

in Louisiana, if they are but temperate.

Country is extremely well watered, much more so in some places than others. The Mississippi divides this Country from North to South into two parts, not equal. The first discoverers of the way of Canada, called it in honour of that great Minis- sippi, which literally de- scribes the savages of the North it is the Father of Rivers, of which the French have, by corruption, the name of Mississippi. Other Indians, especially those lower down the river, call it the Father of Rivers, and at last the French have given it the name of St. Louis.

Travellers have in vain attempted to find its source; which, however, is not known, whatever some authors may allege to the contrary. They join the accounts that may be found upon it.

Mr. de la Riviere, a Canadian, and are- nable de Bienville, Commandant of this Colony, told me, that at the settlement of the French, he had led him to go up this river; that for this end, he made a canoe, made of the bark of

the birch-tree, in order to be more portable in case of need. And that having thus set out with two Canadians and two Indians, with goods, ammunition, and provisions, he went up the river three hundred leagues to the North, above the Illinois: That there he found the Fall, called St. Antony's. This Fall is a flat rock, which traverses the river, and gives it only between eight or ten feet fall. He caused his canoe and effects to be carried over that place; and then embarking afterwards above the Fall, he continued going up the river an hundred leagues more to the North, where he met the Sioux, a people inhabiting that country, at some distance from the Mississippi; some say, on each side of it.

The Sioux, little accustomed to see Europeans, were surprized at seeing him, and asked whither he was going. He told them, up the Mississippi to its source. They answered, that the country whither he was going was very bad, and where he would have great difficulty to find game for subsistence; that it was a great way off, reckoned as far from the source to the fall, as from this last to the sea. According to this information, the Mississippi must measure from its source to

able old age in Louisiana, if they are but sober and temperate.

This country is extremely well watered, but much more so in some places than in others. The Mississippi divides this Colony from North to South into two parts almost equal. The first discoverers of this river by the way of Canada, called it Colbert, in honour of that great Minister. By some savages of the North it is called Mea-~~et~~-Chassipi, which literally denotes, the ancient Father of Rivers, of which the French have, by corruption, formed Mississippi. Other Indians, especially those lower down the river, call it Balbancha; and at last the French have given it the name of St. Louis.

Several travellers have in vain attempted to go up to its source; which, however, is well known, whatever some authors, misinformed, may alledge to the contrary. We here subjoin the accounts that may be most depended upon.

M. de Charleville, a Canadian, and relation of M. de Biainville, Commandant General of this Colony, told me, that at the time of the settlement of the French, curiosity alone had led him to go up this river to its sources; that for this end, he fitted out a canoe, made of the bark of

age in Louisiana, if they are but temperate.

country is extremely well watered much more so in some places than others. The Mississippi divides this country from North to South into two parts of almost equal extent. The first discovered by the way of Canada, called the great River, in honour of that great Minister of the North it is called the great Father of Rivers, of the French have, by corruption, the Mississippi. Other Indians, especially lower down the river, call it the great River; and at last the French have given it the name of St. Louis.

travellers have in vain attempted to find its source; which, however, is unknown, whatever some authors, who may alledge to the contrary, subjoin the accounts that may be depended upon.

Charleville, a Canadian, and are. M. de Biainville, Commandant of this Colony, told me, that at the settlement of the French, one had led him to go up this river to the sources; that for this end, he had a canoe, made of the bark of

the birch-tree, in order to be more portable in case of need. And that having thus set out with two Canadians and two Indians, with goods, ammunition, and provisions, he went up the river three hundred leagues to the North, above the Illinois: That there he found the Fall, called St. Antony's. This Fall is a flat rock, which traverses the river, and gives it only between eight or ten feet fall. He caused his canoe and effects to be carried over that place; and then embarking afterwards above the Fall, he continued going up the river an hundred leagues more to the North, where he met the Sioux, a people inhabiting that country, at some distance from the Mississippi; some say, on each side of it.

The Sioux, little accustomed to see Europeans, were surprized at seeing him, and asked whither he was going. He told them, up the Mississippi to its source. They answered, that the country whither he was going was very bad, and where he would have great difficulty to find game for subsistence; that it was a great way off, reckoned as far from the source to the fall, as from this last to the sea. According to this information, the Mississippi must measure from its source to

its mouth between fifteen and sixteen hundred leagues, as they reckon eight hundred leagues from St. Anthony's Fall to the sea. This conjecture is the more probable, as that far to the North, several rivers of a pretty long course fall into the Mississippi; and that even above St. Anthony's Fall we find in this river between thirty and thirty five fathoms water, and a breadth in proportion; which can never be from a source at no great distance off. I may add, that all the Indians, informed by those nearer the source, are of the same opinion.

Tho' M. de Charleville did not see the source of the Mississippi, he, however, learned, that a great many rivers empty their waters into it: That even above St. Anthony's Fall, he saw rivers on each side of the Mississippi, having a course of upwards of an hundred leagues.

It is proper to observe, that in going down the river from St. Anthony's Fall, the right hand is the West, the left the East. The first river we meet from the Fall, and some leagues lower down, is the river St. Peter, which comes from the West: Lower down to the East, is the river St. Croix, both of them tolerable large rivers. We meet several others

between fifteen and sixteen hundred leagues, as they reckon eight hundred leagues from St. Antony's Fall to this conjecture is the more as that far to the North, several of a pretty long course fall into the Mississippi; and that even above St. Antony's Fall we find in this river between thirty and thirty five fathoms water, in proportion; which can come from a source at no great distance. I add, that all the Indians, in those nearer the source, are of this opinion.

At Charleville did not see the Mississippi, he, however, saw that a great many rivers empty themselves into it: That even above St. Antony's Fall, he saw rivers on each side of the Mississippi, having a course of up to a hundred leagues.

It is proper to observe, that in going up the river from St. Antony's Fall, and is the West, the left the first river we meet from the same leagues lower down, is the Arkansas, which comes from the West, and runs down to the East, is the Missouri, both of them tolerable. We meet several others

still less, the names of which are of no consequence. Afterwards we meet with the river Moingona, which comes from the West, about two hundred and fifty leagues below the Fall, and upwards of an hundred and fifty leagues in length. This river is somewhat brackish. From that river to the Illinois, several rivulets, or brooks, both to the right and left, fall into the Mississippi. The river of the Illinois comes from the East, and takes its rise on the frontiers of Canada; its length is two hundred leagues.

The river Missouri comes from a source about eight hundred leagues distant; and running from North-west to South-east, discharges itself into the Mississippi, about four or five leagues below the river of the Illinois. This river receives several others, in particular the river of the Canzas, which runs above an hundred and fifty leagues. From the rivers of the Illinois and the Missouri to the sea are reckoned five hundred leagues, and three hundred to St. Antony's Fall: From the Missouri to the Wabache, or Ohio, an hundred leagues. By this last river is the passage from Louisiana to Canada. This voyage is performed from New Orleans by going up the Mississippi to the Waba-

che ; which they go up in the same manner quite, to the river of the Miamis ; in which they proceed as far as the carrying place ; from which there are two leagues to a little river which falls into Lake Erie. Here they change their vessels ; they come in pettyaugers, and go down the river St. Laurence to Quebec in birch canoes. On the river St. Laurence are several carrying places, on account of its many falls or cataracts.

Those who have performed this voyage, have told me, they reckoned nine hundred leagues from New Orleans to Quebec. Tho' the Wabache is considered in Louisiana, as the most considerable of the rivers which come from Canada, and which, uniting in one bed form the river, commonly called by that name, yet all the Canadian travellers assure me, that the river called Ohio, and which falls into the Wabache, comes a much longer way than this last ; which should be a reason for giving it the name Ohio ; but custom has prevailed in this respect.

From the Wabache, and on the same side, to Manchac, we see but very few rivers, and those very small ones, which fall into the Mississippi, though there are nearly three hundred and fifty leagues

which they go up in the same manner, to the river of the Miamis; in they proceed as far as the carrying place from which there are two leagues to the river which falls into Lake Erie. They change their vessels; they come in canoes, and go down the river to Quebec in birch canoes. Over St. Laurence are several carries, on account of its many falls.

Who have performed this voyage, tell me, they reckoned nine hundred leagues from New Orleans to Quebec. The Wabache is considerable in Louisiana, as the most considerable rivers which come from Canada, unite in one bed form the river commonly called by that name, yet Canadian travellers assure me, that the river called Ohio, and which falls into the Wabache, comes a much longer distance than this last; which should be a great objection to giving it the name Ohio; but it has prevailed in this respect.

The Wabache, and on the same river at Manchac, we see but very few rapids, those very small ones, which are in the Mississippi, though there are more than a hundred and fifty leagues

from the Wabache to Manchac. This will, doubtless, appear something extraordinary to those unacquainted with the country.

The reason that may be assigned for it, appears quite natural and striking. In all that part of Louisiana, which is to the East of the Mississippi, the lands are so high in the neighbourhood of the river, that in many places the rain-water runs off from the banks of the Mississippi, and discharges itself into rivers, which fall either directly into the sea or into lakes. Another very probable reason is, that from the Wabache to the sea, no rain falls but in sudden gusts; which defect is compensated by the abundant dews, so that the plants lose nothing by that means. The Wabache has a course of three hundred leagues, and the Ohio has its source about a hundred leagues still farther off.

In continuing to go down the Mississippi, from the Wabache to the river of the Arkansas, we observe but few rivers, and those pretty small. The most considerable is that of St. Francis, which is distant thirty and odd leagues from that of the Arkansas. It is on this river of St. Francis, that the hunters of New Orleans go every winter to make salt pro-

vifions, tal'ow and bear's oil, for the fup-
ply of the Capital.

The river of the Arkafas, which is
thirty five leagues lower down, and two
hundred leagues from New-Orleans, is
fo denominated from the Indians of that
name, who dwell on its banks, a little a-
bove its confluence with the Miffiffippi.
It runs three hundred leagues, and its
fource is in the fame latitude with Santa-
Fe, in New Mexico, in the mountains of
which it rifes. It runs up a little to the
North for a hundred leagues, by form-
ing a flat elbow, or winding, and returns
from thence to the South-eaft, quite to
the Miffiffippi. It has a cataract, or fall,
about the middle of its courfe. Some call
it the White River, becaufe in its courfe
it receives a river of that name. The
Great Cut-point is about forty leagues
below the river of the Arkafas : This
was a long circuit which the Miffiffippi
formerly took, and which it has abridg-
ed, by making its way thro' this point of
land.

Below this river, ftill going towards
the fea, we obferve fcarce any thing but
brooks or rivulets, except the river of the
Yafous, fixty leagues lower down. This
river runs but about fifty leagues, and

few and bear's oil, for the sup-
Capital.

er of the Arkansas, which is
leagues lower down, and two
agues from New-Orleans, is
ated from the Indians of that
dwell on its banks, a little a-
fluence with the Mississippi.
ree hundred leagues, and its
the same latitude with Santa-
y Mexico, in the mountains of
ifes. It runs up a little to the
a hundred leagues, by form-
bow, or winding, and returns
e to the South-east, quite to
ppi. It has a cataract, or fall,
middle of its course. Some call
te River, because in its course
a river of that name. The
point is about forty leagues
river of the Arkansas: This
ircuit which the Mississippi
ok, and which it has abridg-
ing its way thro' this point of

ais river, still going towards
e observe scarce any thing but
rivulets, except the river of the
ty leagues lower down. This
but about fifty leagues, and

will hardly admit of a boat for a great
way: It has taken its name from the na-
tion of the Yamous, and some others
dwelling on its banks. Twenty-eight
leagues below the river of the Yamous, is
a great cliff of a reddish free-stone: O-
ver against this cliff are the great and lit-
tle whirlpools.

From this little river, we meet but
with very small ones, till we come to the
Red River, called at first the Marne, be-
cause nearly as big as that river, which
falls into the Seine. The Nachitoches
dwell on its banks, and it was distin-
guished by the name of that nation; but
its common name, and which it still
bears, is that of the Red River. It takes
its rise in New Mexico, forms an elbow
to the North, in the same manner as the
river of the Arkansas, falls down after-
wards towards the Mississippi, running
South-east. They generally allow it a
course of two hundred leagues. At about
ten leagues from its confluence it receives
the Black River, or the river of the Wa-
chitas, which takes its rise pretty near
that of the Arkansas. This rivulet, or
source, forms, as is said, a fork pretty near
its rise, one arm of which falls into the
river of the Arkansas, the largest forms

the Black River. Twenty leagues below the Red River is the Little Cut-point, and a league below that Point are the Little Cliffs.

From the Red River to the sea we observe nothing but some small brooks: But on the East side, twenty-five leagues above New Orleans, we find a channel, which is dry at low water. The inundations of the Mississippi formed this channel (which is called Manchac) below some high lands, which terminate near that place. It discharges itself into the Lake Maurepas, and from thence into that of St. Louis, of which I gave an account before.

The channel runs East, South-east; formerly there was a passage thro' it; but as present it is so choaked up with dead wood, that it begins to have no water* but at the place where it receives the river Amite, which is pretty large, and which runs seventy leagues in a very fine country.

* Manchac is almost dry for three quarters of the year: But during the inundation, the waters of the river have vent thro' it into the Lakes Pontchartrain and St. Louis; Dumont, II. 297.

This is the river Iberville, which is to be the boundary of the British dominions.

River. Twenty leagues below
River is the Little Cut-point,
below that Point are the lit-

the Red River to the sea we
nothing but some small brooks:
the East side, twenty-five leagues
New Orleans, we find a channel,
dry at low water. The inun-
of the Mississippi formed this
(which is called Manchac) below
lands, which terminate near
e. It discharges itself into the
urepas, and from thence into
Louis, of which I gave an ac-
fore.

channel runs East, South-east;
there was a passage thro' it; but
it is so choaked up with dead
that it begins to have no water*
the place where it receives the ri-
te, which is pretty large, and
ns seventy leagues in a very fine

ac is almost dry for three quarters of
But during the inundation, the waters
have a vent thro' it into the Lakes Pont-
and St. Louis, Dumont, II. 297.
the river Iberville, which is to be the
the British dominions.

A very small river falls into Lake Mau-
repas, to the East of Manchac. In pro-
ceeding Eastward, we may pass from
this lake into that of St. Louis, by a riv-
er formed by the waters of the Amite.
In going to the North of this lake, we
meet to the East the little river Tandgi-
pao. From thence proceeding always
East, we come to the river Quefoncte,
which is long and beautiful, and comes
from the Chactaws. Proceeding in the
same route, we meet the river Castin-
Bayouc: We may afterwards quit the
Lake by the Channel, which borders the
same country, and proceeding Eastward
we meet the Pearl River, which falls in-
to this channel.

Farther up the coast, which lies from
West to East, we meet St. Louis's Bay,
into which a little river of that name dis-
charges itself: Farther on, we meet the
river of the Paska-Ogoulas: And at
length we arrive at the Bay of Mobile,
which runs upwards of thirty leagues in-
to the country, where it receives the ri-
ver of the same name, which runs for
about a hundred and fifty leagues from
North to South. All the rivers I have
just mentioned, and which fall not into
the Mississippi, do in like manner run from
North to South.

I return to Manchac, where I quitted the Mississippi. At a little distance from Manchac we meet the river of the Plaquemines ; it lies to the West, and is rather a creek than a river. Three or four leagues lower down is the Fork, which is a channel running to the West of the Mississippi, thro' which a part of the inundations of that river run off. These waters pass thro' several lakes, and from thence to the sea, by Ascension Bay. As to the other rivers to the West of this Bay, their names are unknown.

The waters which fall into those Lakes consist not only of such as pass thro' this channel, but also of those that come out of the Mississippi, when overflowing its banks on each side : For, of all the water which comes out of the Mississippi over its banks, not a drop ever returns into its bed ; but this is only to be understood of the low lands, that is, between fifty and sixty leagues from the sea Eastward, and upwards of an hundred leagues Westward.

It will, doubtless, seem strange, that a river which overflows its banks, should never after recover its waters again, either in whole or in part ; and this will appear so much the more singular, as every

to Manchac, where I quitted
 the river. At a little distance from
 the river we meet the river of the Pla-
 ta, it lies to the West, and is ra-
 ther than a river. Three or four
 miles down is the Fork, which is
 running to the West of the
 river, which a part of the in-
 fluence of that river run off. These
 are thro' several lakes, and from
 the sea, by Ascension Bay. As
 the rivers to the West of this
 are unknown.

Those which fall into those Lakes
 only of such as pass thro' this
 also of those that come out
 of the river, when overflowing its
 banks. For, of all the water
 that comes out of the Mississippi over
 the top of a drop ever returns into
 this is only to be understood
 that is, between fifty
 leagues from the sea Eastward,
 of an hundred leagues West-

ward, seem strange, that a
 river which overflows its banks, should
 recover its waters again, ei-
 ther in part; and this will ap-
 pear the more singular, as every

where else it happens otherwise in the like
 circumstances.

It appeared no less strange to myself;
 and I have on all occasions endeavoured
 to the utmost, to find out what could
 produce an effect, which really appeared
 to me very extraordinary, and, I imagine,
 not without success.

From Manchac down to the sea, it is
 probable, and even in some degree cer-
 tain, that all the lands thereabouts are
 brought down and accumulated by means
 of the ooze, which the Mississippi carries
 along with it in its annual inundations;
 which begin in the month of March, by
 the melting of the snow to the North, and
 last for about three months. Those oozy
 or muddy lands easily produce herbs and
 reeds; and when the Mississippi happens
 to overflow the following year, these herbs
 and reeds intercept a part of this ooze,
 so that those at a distance from the river
 cannot retain so large a quantity of it,
 since those that grow near the river have
 stoppt the greatest part; and by a necessa-
 ry consequence, the others farther off,
 and in proportion as they are distant from
 the Mississippi, can retain a much less
 quantity of the mud. In this manner the
 land rising higher along the river, in pro-

cess of time the banks of the Mississippi became higher than the lands about it. In like manner also the neighbouring lakes, on each side of the river, are remains of the sea, which are not yet filled up. Other rivers have firm banks, formed by the hands of Nature, a land of the same nature with the continent, and always adhering thereto : These sorts of banks, instead of augmenting, do daily diminish, either by sinking, or tumbling down into the bed of the river. The banks of the Mississippi, on the contrary, increase, and cannot diminish in the low and accumulated lands ; because the ooze alone, deposited on its banks, increases them ; which, besides, is the reason, that the Mississippi becomes narrower, in place of washing away the earth, and enlarging its bed, as all other known rivers do. If we consider these facts, therefore, we ought no longer to be surprized, that the waters of the Mississippi, when once they have left their bed, can never return thither again.

In order to prove this augmentation of lands, I shall relate what happened near New Orleans : One of the inhabitants caused a well to be sunk at a little distance from the Mississippi, in order to procure

the banks of the Mississippi higher than the lands about it. In the also these neighbouring lakes, of the river, are remains of which are not yet filled up. O- have firm banks, formed by of Nature, a land of the same the continent, and always hereto : These sorts of banks, augmenting, do daily diminish, sinking, or tumbling down into the river. The banks of the on the contrary, increase, and nish in the low and accumu- because the ooze alone, de- its banks, increases them ; les, is the reason, that the comes narrower, in place of y the earth, and enlarging its er known rivers do. If we facts, therefore, we ought be surprized, that the waters ppi, when once they have can never return thither

prove this augmentation of elate what happened near : One of the inhabitants be sunk at a little distance ppi, in order to procure

a clearer water. At twenty feet deep there was found a tree laid flat, three feet in diameter : The height of the earth was therefore augmented twenty feet since the fall or lodging of that tree, as well by the accumulated mud, as by the rotting of the leaves, which fall every winter, and which the Mississippi carries down in vast quantities. In effect it sweeps down a great deal of mud, because it runs for twelve hundred leagues at least across a country, which is nothing else but earth, which the depth of the river sufficiently proves. It carries down vast quantities of leaves, canes, and trees, upon its waters, the breadth of which is always above half a league, and sometimes a league, and sometimes a league and a quarter. Its banks are covered with much wood sometimes for the breadth of a league on each side, from its source to its mouth. There is nothing therefore more easy to be conceived, than that this river carries down with its waters a prodigious quantity of ooze, leaves, canes, and trees, which it continually tears up by the roots, and that the sea throwing back again all these things, they should necessarily produce the lands in question, and which are sensibly encreasing. At the entrance of the

ing, in order to be sure of the pass: This channel is, at low water, between seventeen and eighteen feet deep*.

This description may suffice to shew, that the falling in with the land from sea is bad; the land scarce appears two leagues off; which doubtless made the Spaniards call the Mississippi Rio Escondido, the hid River. This river is generally muddy, owing to the waters of the Missouri; for before this junction, the water of the Mississippi is very clear. I must not omit mentioning, that no ship can either enter, or continue in the river, when the waters are high, on account of the prodigious numbers of trees, and vast quantities of dead wood, which it carries down; and which, together with the canes, leaves, mud, and sand, which the sea throws back upon the coast, are continually augmenting the land, and make it project into the Gulf of Mexico, like the bill of a bird.

I should be naturally led to divide Louisiana into the Higher and Lower, on account of the great difference there is

* I shall make no mention of the islands, which are frequent in the Mississippi, as being, properly speaking, nothing but little isles, produced by some trees, tho' the soil be nothing but a sand bottom

(117)

(116)

be sure of the pass: This low water, between seven-
teen feet deep*.
tion may suffice to shew,
in with the land from sea
scarcely appears two leagues
subtleties made the Spaniards
Capi Rio Escondido, the
his river is generally mud-
the waters of the Missouri;
junction, the water of the
y clear. I must not omit
no ship can either enter,
the river, when the wa-
account of the prodig-
of trees, and vast quanti-
d, which it carries down;
gether with the canes,
d sand, which the sea
n the coast, are continu-
the land, and make it pro-
lf of Mexico, like the

naturally led to divide
the Higher and Lower, on
great difference there is

mention of the islands, which Mississippi, as being, properly little isles, produced by some thing out a sand bottom.

between the two principal parts of this vast country. The Higher I would call that part, in which we find stone, which we first meet with between the river of the Natchez and that of the Yafous, between which is a cliff of a fine free-stone; and I would terminate that part at Manchac, where the high lands end. I would extend the Lower Louisiana from thence down to the sea. The bottom of the lands on the hills is a red clay, and so compact, as might afford a solid foundation for any building whatever. This clay is covered by a light earth, which is almost black, and very fertile. The grass grows there knee deep; and in the bottoms, which separate these small eminences, it is higher than the tallest man. Towards the end of September both are successively set on fire; and in eight or ten days young grass shoots up half a foot high. One will easily judge, that in such pastures herds of all creatures fatten extraordinarily. The flat country is watery, and appears to have been formed by every thing that comes down to the sea. I shall add, that pretty near the Nachitoches we find banks of muske-shells, such as those of which Cockle-Island is formed. The neighbouring nation affirms, that ac-

Pass or Channel to the South East, there was built a small Fort, still called Balise. This Fort was built on a little island, without the mouth of the river. In 1734 it stood on the same spot, and I have been told that at present it is half a league within the river : The land therefore hath in twenty years gained this space on the sea. Let us now resume the sequel of the Geographical Description of Louisiana.

The coast is bounded to the West by St. Bernard's Bay, where M. de la Salle landed ; into this bay a small river falls, and there are some others, which discharge their waters between this bay and Ascension Bay ; the Planters seldom frequent that coast. On the East the coast is bounded by Rio Perdido, which the French corruptedly called aux Perdrix ; Rio Perdido signifying Lost River, aptly so called by the Spaniards, because it loses itself under ground, and afterwards appears again, and discharges itself into the sea, a little to the East of Mobile, on which the first French Planters settled.

From the Fork down to the Sea, there is no river ; nor is it possible there should be any, after what I have related : On the contrary, we find at a small distance from

channel to the South East, there
a small Fort, still called Balise.
It was built on a little island,
at the mouth of the river. In 1734
on the same spot, and I have been
at present it is half a league
from the river : The land therefore
in twenty years gained this space on
the river : Let us now resume the sequel
of our geographical Description of Lou-

island is bounded to the West by
Card's Bay, where M. de la Salle
into this bay a small river falls,
are some others, which discharge
between this bay and Ascen-
the Planters seldom frequent
On the East the coast is bound-
to Perdido, which the French
called aux Perdrix ; Rio Per-
dido, aptly so called
because it loses itself
in the sea, and afterwards appears a-
gain, discharging itself into the sea, a
little East of Mobile, on which the
French Planters settled.

the Fork down to the Sea, there
; nor is it possible there should
be what I have related : On the
we find at a small distance from

the Fork another channel to the East, cal-
led Bayou of le Sueur : It is full of soft
mud, and communicates with
the lakes, which lie to the East.

On coming nearer to the sea, we meet,
at about eight leagues from the principal
mouth of the Mississippi, the first Pass ;
and a league lower down, the Otter Pass.
These two passes, or channels, are only
for pettyaugers. From this place there
is no land fit to tread on, it being all a
quagmire down to the sea. There also
we find a Point, which parts the mouths
of the Mississippi : That to the right is
called the South Pass, or channel ; the
West Point of which runs two leagues
farther into the sea than the Point of the
South-east-Pass, which is to the left of
that of the South Pass. At first, vessels
entered by the South-east Pass, but before
we go down to it, we find to the left the
East-Pass, which is that by which ships
enter at present.

At each of these three Passes, or Chan-
nels, there is a Bar, as in all other rivers :
These bars are three quarters of a league
broad, with only eight or nine feet water.
But there is a channel through this bar,
which being often subject to shift, the
coasting pilot is obliged to be always found-

ing, in order to be sure of the pass: This channel is, at low water, between seventeen and eighteen feet deep*.

This description may suffice to shew, that the falling in with the land from sea is bad; the land scarce appears two leagues off; which doubtless made the Spaniards call the Mississippi Rio Escondido, the hid River. This river is generally muddy, owing to the waters of the Missouri; for before this junction, the water of the Mississippi is very clear. I must not omit mentioning, that no ship can either enter, or continue in the river, when the waters are high, on account of the prodigious numbers of trees, and vast quantities of dead wood, which it carries down; and which, together with the canes, leaves, mud, and sand, which the sea throws back upon the coast, are continually augmenting the land, and make it project into the Gulf of Mexico, like the bill of a bird.

I should be naturally led to divide Louisiana into the Higher and Lower, on account of the great difference there is

* I shall make no mention of the islands, which are frequent in the Mississippi, as being, properly speaking, nothing but little isles, produced by some trees, tho' the soil be nothing but a sand bottom.

(116)

to be sure of the pass: This at low water, between seven-
teen feet deep*.

description may suffice to shew,
ing in with the land from sea
and scarce appears two leagues
doubtless made the Spaniards
Mississippi Rio Escondido, the
This river is generally mud-
the waters of the Missouri;
s junction, the water of the
very clear. I must not omit
that no ship can either enter,
in the river, when the wa-
on account of the prodig-
s of trees, and vast quanti-
ood, which it carries down;
together with the canes,
and sand, which the sea
upon the coast, are continu-
ing the land, and make it pro-
Gulf of Mexico, like the

naturally led to divide
the Higher and Lower, on
great difference there is

no mention of the islands, which
Mississippi, as being, properly
but little isles, produced by some
be nothing but a sand bottom

(117)

between the two principal parts of this
vast country. The Higher I would call that
part, in which we find stone, which we
first meet with between the river of the
Natchez and that of the Yafous, between
which is a cliff of a fine free-stone; and I
would terminate that part at Manchac,
where the high lands end. I would ex-
tend the Lower Louisiana from thence
down to the sea. The bottom of the
lands on the hills is a red clay, and so
compact, as might afford a solid founda-
tion for any building whatever. This clay
is covered by a light earth, which is almost
black, and very fertile. The grass grows
there knee deep; and in the bottoms,
which separate these small eminences, it
is higher than the tallest man. Towards
the end of September both are successively
set on fire; and in eight or ten days
young grass shoots up half a foot high.
One will easily judge, that in such pas-
tures herds of all creatures fatten extraor-
dinarily. The flat country is watery,
and appears to have been formed by eve-
ry thing that comes down to the sea. I
shall add, that pretty near the Nachito-
ches we find banks of muscle-shells, such
as those of which Cockle-Island is formed.
The neighbouring nation affirms, that ac-

According to their old tradition, the sea formerly came up to this place. The women of this nation go and gather these shells and make a powder of them, of which they make their pottery, or earthen ware. However, I would not advise the use of these shells indifferently for this purpose, because they are naturally apt to crack in the fire : I have therefore reason to think, that those found at the Nachitoches have acquired their good quality only by the discharge of their salts, from continuing for so many ages out of the sea.

If we may give credit to the tradition of these people, and if we would reason on the facts I have advanced, we shall be naturally led to believe, and indeed every thing in this country shews it, that the Lower Louisiana is a country gained on the sea, whose bottom is a crystal sand, white as snow, fine as flour, and such as is found both to the East and West of the Mississippi ; and we may expect, that in future ages, the sea and the river may form another land like that of the Lower Louisiana. The Port Balise shews, that a century is sufficient to extend Louisiana two leagues towards the sea.

The coast, which was the first inhabited, extends from Rio Perdido to the lake

to their old tradition, the sea for-
ne up to this place. The women
ion go and gather these shells
a powder of them, of which
their pottery, or earthen ware,
I would not advise the use of
is indifferently for this purpose,
they are naturally apt to crack in
I have therefore reason to think,
found at the Nachitoches have
their good quality only by the
of their salts, from continuing
ny ages out of the sea.

may give credit to the tradition
people, and if we would reason
its I have advanced, we shall be
led to believe, and indeed every
his country shews it, that the
ouifiana is a country gained on
whose bottom is a crystal sand,
now, fine as flour, and such as
oth to the East and West of
ippi; and we may expect, that
ages, the sea and the river may
her land like that of the Lower

The Fort Balise shews, that a
sufficient to extend Louisiana
es towards the sea.

ast, which was the first inhabi-
ds from Rio Perdido to the lake

of St. Louis. This ground is a very fine
sand, white as snow, and so dry, as not
to be fit to produce any thing but pine,
cedar, and some ever-green oaks.

The river Mobile is the most consider-
able of that coast to the East. It rolls its
waters over a pure sand, which cannot
make it muddy. But if this water is
clear, it partakes of the sterility of its bot-
tom, so that it is far from abounding so
much in fish as the Mississippi. Its banks
and neighbourhood are not very fertile
from its source down to the sea. The
ground is stoney, and scarce any thing but
gravel, mixt with a little earth. Tho'
these lands are not quite barren, there is
a wide difference between their produc-
tions and those of the lands in the neigh-
bourhood of the Mississippi. Mountains
there are, but whether stone fit for build-
ing I know not.

In the confines of the river of the Ali-
bamous (Creeks,) the lands are better :
The river falls into the Mobile, above
the bay of the same name. This bay may
be about thirty leagues in length, after

* This river, which they call Mobile, and which
after the rains of winter is a fine river in spring, is
but a brook in summer, especially towards its
source. Dument, II. 228.

having received the Mobile, which runs from North to South for about one hundred and fifty leagues. On the banks of this river was the first settlement of the French in Louisiana, which stood till New-Orleans was founded, which is at this day the capital of the colony.

The lands and water of the Mobile are not only unfruitful in all kinds of vegetables, and fish, but the nature of the waters and of the soil, contributes also to prevent the multiplication of animals; even women have experienced this. I understood by Madam Hubert, whose husband was at my arrival Commissary Director of the colony, that in the time the French were in that post, there were seven or eight barren women, who all became fruitful, after settling with their husbands on the banks of the Mississippi, where the capital was built, and whither the settlement was removed.

Fort St. Louis of Mobile was the French post. This fort stands on the banks of that river, near another river, called Dog River, which falls into the bay to the South of the fort.

Tho' these countries are not so fertile, as those in the neighbourhood of the Mississippi; we are, however, to observe,

ceived the Mobile, which runs
h to South for about one hun-
dy leagues. On the banks of
was the first settlement of the
Louisiana, which stood till
ans was founded, which is at
capital of the colony.

ds and water of the Mobile are
nfruitful in all kinds of vegeta-
sh, but the nature of the waters
soil, contributes also to pre-
multiplication of animals; even
ve experienced this. I under-
adam Hubert, whose husband
arrival Commissary Director
ny, that in the time the French
at post, there were seven or
en women, who all became
ter settling with their husbands
ks of the Mississippi, where the
s built, and whither the settle-
removed.

Louis of Mobile was the French
is fort stands on the banks of
near another river, called Dog
ich falls into the bay to the
ne fort.

ese countries are not so fertile,
the neighbourhood of the Mis-
re are, however, to observe,

that the interior parts of this country are
much better than those near the sea.

On the coast to the West of Mobile,
we find islands, not worth mentioning.

From the sources of the river of the
Paika-Ogoulas, quite to those of the river
of Quesencke, which falls into the lake
St. Louis, the lands are light and fertile,
but something gravelly, on account of the
neighbourhood of the mountains, that
lie to the North. This country is inter-
mixt with extensive hills, fine meadows,
numbers of thickets, and sometimes with
woods, thickly set with cane, particularly
on the banks of rivers and brooks; and is
extremely proper for agriculture.

The mountains which I said these coun-
tries have to the North, form nearly the
figure of a chaplet, with one end pretty
near the Mississippi, the other on the
banks of the Mobile. The inner part of
this chaplet or chain is filled with hills;
which are pretty fertile in grass, simples,
fruits of the country, horse-chestnuts, and
wild chestnuts, as large and at least as good
as those of Lyon.

To the North of this chain of moun-
tains lies the country of the Chicafaws,
very fine and free of mountains: it has
only very extensive and gentle eminences,

M

or rising grounds, fertile groves and meadows, which in spring-time are all over red, from the great plenty of wood-strawberries : In Summer, the plains exhibit the most beautiful enamel, by the quantity and variety of the flowers. In Autumn, after setting fire to the grass, they are covered with mushrooms.

All the countries I have just mentioned are stored with game of every kind. The buffalo is found on the most rising grounds ; the partridge in thick open woods, such as the groves in meadows ; the elk delight in large forests, as also the pheasant ; the deer, which is a roving animal, is every where to be met with, because in whatever place it may happen to be, it always has something to browse on. The ring-dove here flies in winter with such rapidity, as to pass over a great deal of country in a few hours ; ducks and other aquatic game are in such numbers, that wherever there is water, we are sure to find many more than it is possible for us to shoot, were we to do nothing else ; and thus we find game in every place, and fish in plenty in the rivers.

Let us resume the coast ; which, though flat and dry, on account of its sand, is a

ounds, fertile groves and meadows in spring-time are all over the great plenty of wood-straw. Summer, the plains exhibit beautiful enamel, by the quantity of the flowers. In Autumn, a fire to the grass, they are with mushrooms.

countries I have just mentioned with game of every kind. is found on the most rising the partridge in thick open as the groves in meadows; light in large forests, as also the deer, which is a roving every where to be met with, whatever place it may happen it always has something to. The ring-dove here flies in such rapidity, as to pass over a part of country in a few hours; other aquatic game are in numbers, that wherever there is are sure to find many more possible for us to shoot, were nothing else; and thus we find every place, and fish in plenty.

sume the coast; which, though very, on account of its sand, a-

bounds with delicious fish, and excellent shell-fish. But the crystal sand which is pernicious to the sight by its whiteness, might it not be adapted for making some beautiful composition or manufacture? Here I leave the learned to find out, what use this sand may be of.

If this coast is flat, it has in this respect an advantage; as we might say, Nature wanted to make it so, in order to be self defended against the descent of an enemy.

Coming out of the bay of Paska Ogoulas, if we still proceed West, we meet in our way with the bay of Old Biloxi, where a fort was built, and a settlement begun; but a great fire, spread by a violent wind, destroyed it in a few moments, which in prudence ought never to have been built at all.

Those, who settled Old Biloxi, could not, doubtless, think of quitting the sea-coast. They settled to the West, close to New Biloxi, on a sand equally dry and pernicious to the sight. In this place, the large grants happened to be laid off, which were extremely inconvenient to have been made on so barren a soil; where it was impossible to find the least plant or greens for any money, and where

the hired servants died with hunger in the most fertile colony in the whole world

In pursuing the same route and the same coast Westward, the lands are still the same, quite to the small bay of St. Louis, and to the Channels, which lead to the lake of that name. At a distance from the sea the earth is of a good quality, fit for agriculture; as being a light soil, but something gravelly. The coast to the North of the bay of St. Louis is of a different nature, and much more fertile. The lands at a greater distance to the North of this last coast, are not very distant from the Mississippi; they are also much more fruitful than those to the East of this bay in the same latitude.

In order to follow the sea-coast down to the mouth of the Mississippi, we must proceed almost South, quitting the channels. I have elsewhere mentioned, that we have to pass between Cat-Island, which we leave to the left, and Cockle-Island, which we leave to the right. In making this ideal route, we pass over banks, almost level with the water, covered with a vast number of islets; we leave to the left the Candlemas-Isles, which are only heaps of sand, having the form

servants died with hunger in
fertile colony in the whole

ing the same route and the
Westward, the lands are still
quite to the small bay of St.
to the Channels, which lead
of that name. At a distance
the earth is of a good qua-
agriculture; as being a light
nothing gravelly. The coast to
of the bay of St. Louis is of a
ture, and much more fertile.
at a greater distance to the
his last coast, are not very dif-
the Mississippi; they are also
e fruitful than those to the
bay in the same latitude.

to follow the sea-coast down
th of the Mississippi, we must
most South, quitting the chan-
ve elsewhere mentioned, that
o pass between Cat-Island,
eave to the left, and Cockle-
ch we leave to the right. In
ideal route, we pass over
ft level with the water, cover-
ast number of islets; we leave
the Candlemas-Isles, which
ps of sand, having the form

of a gut, cut in pieces; they rise but lit-
tle above the sea, and scarcely yield a do-
zen of plants, just as in the neighbour-
ing islets, I have now mentioned. We
leave to the right lake Borgne, which is
another outlet of the lake St. Louis, and
continuing the same route, by several ill-
ets, for a considerable way, we find a lit-
tle, open, clear sea, and the coast to the
right, which is but a quagmire, gradually
formed by a very soft ooze, on which
some reeds grow. This coast leads soon
to the East pass or channel, which is one
of the mouths of the Mississippi, and this
we find bordered with a like soil, if in-
deed it deserves the name of soil.

There is, moreover, the South-east
pass, where stands Balise, and the South
pass, which projects farther into the sea.
Balise is a fort built on an island of sand,
secured by a great number of piles bound
with good timber-work. There are ledg-
ings in it for the officers and the garri-
son; and a sufficient number of guns
for defending the entrance of the Missis-
sippi. It is there they take the bar-pi-
lot on board, in order to bring the ships
into the river. All the passes and en-
trances of the Mississippi, are as frightful
to the eye, as the interior part of the co-
lony is delightful to it.

The quagmires continue still for about seven leagues going up the Mississippi, at the entrance of which we meet a bar, three fourths of a league broad : which we cannot pass without a bar-pilot, who alone is acquainted with the channel.

All the West coast resembles that which I mentioned, from Mobile to the bay of St. Louis; it is equally flat, formed of a like sand, and a bar of isles, which lengthen out the coast, and hinder a descent; the coast continues thus, going Westward, quite to Ascension bay, and even a little farther. Its soil also is barren, and in every respect like to that I have just mentioned.

I again enter the Mississippi, and pass with speed over these quagmires, incapable to bear up the traveller, and which only afford a retreat to gnats and musketoes, and to water some fowl, which, doubtless, find food to live on, and that in security.

On coming out of these marshes, we find a neck of land on each side of the Mississippi; this indeed is firm land, but lined with marshes, resembling those at the entrance of the river. For the space of three or four leagues, this neck of land is at first bare of trees, but comes after

mires continue still for about
going up the Mississippi, at
e of which we meet a bar,
s of a league broad : which
pals without a bar-pilot, who
acquainted with the channel.

We ft coast resembles that
mentioned, from Mobile to the
Louis; it is equally flat, form-
e sand, and a bar of isles, which
ut the coast, and hinder a de-
e coast continues thus, going
quite to Ascension bay, and
le farther. Its soil also is bar-
every respect like to that I
mentioned.

enter the Mississippi, and pass
over these quagmires, increpa-
up the traveller, and which
a retreat to gnats and murque-
o water some fowl, which,
find food to live on, and that

ing out of these marshes, we
k of land on each side of the
; this indeed is firm land, but
marshes, resembling those at
e of the river. For the space
four leagues, this neck of land
tre of trees, but comes after

to be covered with them, so as to inter-
cept the winds, which the ships require,
in order to go up the river to the capital.
This land, tho' very narrow, is continu-
ed, together with the trees it bears, quite
to the English Reach, which is defended
by two forts; one to the right, the other
to the left of the Mississippi.

The origin of the name, English Reach,
(Detour aux Anglois) is differently af-
signed. I made enquiry of the oldest of
the country, to what circumstance this
Reach might owe its name. And they
told me, that before the first settlement
of the French in this colony, the English,
having heard of the beauty of the coun-
try, which they had, doubtless, visited
before, in going thither from Carolina by
land, attempted to make themselves mas-
ters of the entrance of the Mississippi,
and to go up the river, in order to fortify
themselves on the first firm ground
they could meet. Excited by that jeal-
ousy, which is natural to them, they took
such precautions, as they imagined to be
proper, in order to succeed.

The Indians on their part, who had
already seen or heard of several people
(French) having gone up and down the
Mississippi at different times; the Indians

man, and very slender and fine ; whereas the grass of the same meadow on the high lands rises scarce knee deep ; as it does on the highest eminences, unless there is found something underneath, which not only renders the grass shorter, but even prevents its growth by the efficacy of some exhalations ; which is not ordinarily the case on hills, tho' rising high, but only on the mountains properly so called.

My experience in Architecture having taught me, that several quarries have been found under a clay like this, I was always of opinion, there must be some in those hills.

Since I made these reflections, I have had occasion in my journey to the country, to confirm these conjectures. We had set up our hut at the foot of an eminence, which was steep towards us, and near a fountain, whose water was lukewarm and pure.

This fountain appeared to me to issue out of a hole, which was formed by the sinking of the earth. I stooped, in order to take a better view of it, and I observed stone, which to the eye appeared proper for building, and the upper part was this clay, which is peculiar to the coun-

very slender and fine; whereas of the same meadow on the sides scarce knee deep; as it the highest eminences, unless round something underneath, only renders the grafs shorter, prevents its growth by the effluve exhalations; which is not the case on hills, tho' rising only on the mountains properly.

Experience in Architecture having shewn, that several quarries have been found under a clay like this, I was of opinion, there must be some in

made these reflections, I have been in my journey to the country to confirm these conjectures. We pitched our hut at the foot of an eminence, which was steep towards us, and the stream, whose water was lukewarm, appeared to me to issue from the earth, which was formed by the same earth. I stooped, in order to get a better view of it, and I observed, that the eye appeared protruding, and the upper part was peculiar to the country.

try. I was highly pleased thus to ascertain, that there was stone fit for building in this colony, where it was imagined there is none, because it does not come out of the earth to shew itself.

It is not to be wondered, that there is none to be found in Lower Louisiana, which is only an earth accumulated by ooze; but it is far more extraordinary not to see a flint, nor even a pebble on the hills, for upwards of an hundred leagues sometimes; however this is a thing common in this province.

I imagine I ought to assign a reason for it, which seems pretty probable to me. This land has never been turned, or dug, and is very close above the clay, which is extremely hard, and covers the stone, which cannot shew itself through such a covering: It is therefore no such surprize, that we observe no stone out of the earth in these plains and on these eminences.

All these high lands are generally meadows and forests of tall trees, with grafs up to the knee. Along gullies they prove to be thickets, in which wood of every kind is found, and also the fruits of the country.

N

Ifay, who, perhaps, were not so well pleased with such neighbours, were still more frightened at seeing a ship enter the river, which determined them to stop its passage; but this was impossible, as long as the English had any wind, of which they availed themselves quite to this Reach. These Indians were the Ouachas and Chaouachas, who dwelt to the West of the Mississippi, and below this Reach. There were of them on each side of the river, and they lying in the canes, observed the English, and followed them as they went up, without daring to attack them.

When the English were come to the entrance of this Reach, the little wind, they had, failed them; observing, besides, that the Mississippi made a great turn or winding, they despaired of succeeding; and wanted to moor in this spot, for which purpose they must bring a rope to land: But the Indians shot a great number of arrows at them, till the report of a cannon, fired at random, scattered them, and gave the signal to the English to go on board, for fear the Indians should come in greater number, and cut them in pieces.

Such is the origin of the name of this

who, perhaps, were not so well
with such neighbours, were still
frightened at seeing a ship enter the
Reach, which determined them to stop it.
but this was impossible, as long
as the English had any wind, of which
the Indians failed themselves quite to this.
These Indians were the Oua-
Chaouachas, who dwelt to the
north of the Mississippi, and below this.
There were of them on each
side of the river, and they lying in the
middle served the English, and follow-
ed as they went up, without daring
to attack them.

The English were come to the
mouth of this Reach, the little wind,
which failed them; observing, be-
cause the Mississippi made a great
bend, they despaired of suc-
ceeding, and wanted to moor in this spot,
in case they must bring a rope.
But the Indians shot a great
number of arrows at them, till the report
of the muskets, fired at random, scattered
gave the signal to the English
board, for fear the Indians
were in greater number, and cut
off their retreats.

The origin of the name of this

Reach. The Mississippi in this place
forms the figure of a crescent, almost
closed; so that the same wind which
brings up a ship, proves often contrary,
when come to the Reach: And this is
the reason that ships moor, and go up
towed, or tacking. This Reach is six or
seven leagues, some assign it eight, more
or less, according as they happen to make
way.

The lands, on both sides of this Reach,
are inhabited, tho' the depth of soil is
inconsiderable. Immediately above this
Reach stands New Orleans, the capital
of this colony, on the east of the Mississippi.
A league behind the town, directly back
from the river, we meet with a Bayou
or creek, which can bear large boats
with oars. In following this Bayou for
the space of a league, we go to the lake St.
Louis, and after traversing obliquely this
lake, we meet the Channels, which lead
to Mobile, where I began my description
of the nature of the soil of Louisiana.

The ground on which New Orleans
is situated, being an earth accumulated
by the ooze, in the same manner as is
that both below and above, a good way
from the capital, is of a good quality for
agriculture, only that it is strong, and

rather too fat. This land being flat, and drowned by the inundations for several ages, cannot fail to be kept in moisture, there being, moreover, only a mole or bank to prevent the river from overflowing it; and would be even too moist, and incapable of cultivation, had not this mole been made, and ditches, close to each other, to facilitate the draining off the waters: By this means it has been put in a condition to be cultivated with success.

From New Orleans to Manchac on the east of the Mississippi, twenty five leagues above the capital, and quite to the fork to the west, almost over-against Manchac, and a little way off, the lands are of the same kind and quality with those of New Orleans.

To the west, above the Fork, the lands are pretty flat, but exempt from inundations. The part best known of these lands is called Baya-Ogoula, a name framed of Bayouc and Ogoula, which signifies the nation dwelling near the Bayouc; there having been a nation of that name in that place, when the first Frenchmen came down the Mississippi; it lies twenty-five leagues from the capital.

too fat. This land being flat, and by the inundations for several years not fail to be kept in moisture being, moreover, only a mole to prevent the river from overflowing; and would be even too moist, capable of cultivation, had not been made, and ditches, close together, to facilitate the draining waters: By this means it has been in a condition to be cultivated for centuries.

New Orleans to Manchac on the Mississippi, twenty five miles above the capital, and quite to the west, almost over-against it, and a little way off, the lands are the same kind and quality with New Orleans.

On the west, above the Fork, the land is pretty flat, but exempt from inundations. The part best known of it is called Baya-Ogoula, a name of Bayouc and Ogoula, which the nation dwelling near the river there having been a nation of in that place, when the first Frenchmen came down the Mississippi; it is fifty-five leagues from the capital.

But to the east, the lands are a good deal higher, seeing from Manchac to the river Wabache they are between an hundred and two hundred feet higher than the Mississippi in its greatest floods. The slope of these lands goes off perpendicularly from the Mississippi, which on that side receives but few rivers, and those very small, if we except the river of the Yafous, whose course is not above fifty leagues.

All these high lands, are, besides, surmounted, in a good many places, by little eminences, or small hills, and rising grounds running off lengthwise, with gentle slopes. It is only when we go a little way from the Mississippi, that we find these high lands are over-topped by little mountains, which appear to be all earth, tho' steep, without the least gravel or pebble being perceived on them.

The soil on these high lands is very good; it is black, light mold, about three feet deep on the hills or rising grounds. This upper earth lies upon a reddish clay, very strong and stiff; the lower places between these hills are of the same nature, but there the black earth is between five and six feet deep. The grass growing in the hollows is of the height of a

man, and very slender and fine ; whereas the grass of the same meadow on the high lands rises scarce knee deep ; as it does on the highest eminences, unless there is found something underneath, which not only renders the grass shorter, but even prevents its growth by the efficacy of some exhalations ; which is not ordinarily the case on hills, tho' rising high, but only on the mountains properly so called.

My experience in Architecture having taught me, that several quarries have been found under a clay like this, I was always of opinion, there must be some in those hills.

Since I made these reflections, I have had occasion in my journey to the country, to confirm these conjectures. We had set up our hut at the foot of an eminence, which was steep towards us, and near a fountain, whose water was lukewarm and pure.

This fountain appeared to me to issue out of a hole, which was formed by the sinking of the earth. I stooped, in order to take a better view of it, and I observed stone, which to the eye appeared proper for building, and the upper part was this clay, which is peculiar to the coun-

and very slender and fine ; whereas
 of the same meadow on the
 rises scarce knee deep ; as it
 the highest eminences, unless
 found something underneath,
 not only renders the grass shorter,
 prevents its growth by the efi-
 some exhalations ; which is not
 ly the case on hills, tho' rising
 only on the mountains proper-
 lled.

experience in Architecture having
 me, that several quarries have
 and under a clay like this, I was
 of opinion, there must be some in
 ls.

I made these reflections, I have
 sion in my journey to the coun-
 confirm these conjectures. We
 up our hut at the foot of an emi-
 which was steep towards us, and
 ountain, whose water was luke-
 and pure.

ountain appeared to me to issue
 hole, which was formed by the
 of the earth. I stooped, in order
 better view of it, and I observ-
 which to the eye appeared pro-
 building, and the upper part was
 which is peculiar to the coun-

try. I was highly pleased thus to af-
 certain, that there was stone fit for
 building in this colony, where it was
 imagined there is none, because it does
 not come out of the earth to shew it-
 self.

It is not to be wondered, that there is
 none to be found in Lower Louisiana,
 which is only an earth accumulated by
 ooze ; but it is far more extraordinary not
 to see a flint, nor even a pebble on the
 hills, for upwards of an hundred leagues
 sometimes ; however this is a thing com-
 mon in this province.

I imagine I ought to assign a reason
 for it, which seems pretty probable to
 me. This land has never been turned, or
 dug, and is very close above the clay,
 which is extremely hard, and covers the
 stone, which cannot shew itself through
 such a covering : It is therefore no such
 surprize, that we observe no stone out of
 the earth in these plains and on these
 eminences.

All these high lands are generally
 meadows and forests of tall trees, with
 grass up to the knee. Along gullies they
 prove to be thickets, in which wood of
 every kind is found, and also the fruits
 of the country.

Almost all these lands on the east of the river are such as I have described ; that is, the meadows are on those high grounds, whose slope is very gentle ; we also find there tall forests, and thickets in the low bottoms. In the meadows we observe here and there groves of very tall and straight oaks, to the number of four-score or an hundred at most : There are others of about forty or fifty, which seem to have been planted by men's hands in these meadows, for a retreat to the buffaloes, deer, and other animals, and a screen against storms, and the sting of the flies.

The tall forests are all hickory, or all oak : in these last we find a great many morels ; but then there grows a species of mushrooms at the feet of felled walnut-trees, which the Indians carefully gather ; I tasted of them, and found them good.

The meadows are not only covered with grass fit for pasture, but produce quantities of wood-strawberries in the month of April ; for the following months the prospect is charming, we scarce observe a pile of grass, unless what we tread under foot, the flowers,

all these lands on the east of
 re such as I have described;
 meadows are on those high
 whose slope is very gentle; we
 ere tall forests, and thickets
 bottoms. In the meadows we
 re and there groves of very tall
 t oaks, to the number of four-
 hundred at most: There are
 out forty or fifty, which seem
 en planted by men's hands in
 ows, for a retreat to the buf-
 r, and other animals, and a
 nst storms, and the sitting of

forests are all hickory, or all
 se last we find a great many
 at then there grows a species
 ns at the feet of felled walnut-
 h the Indians carefully ga-
 ed of them, and found them

dows are not only covered
 it for pasture, but produce
 of wood-strawberries in the
 April; for the following
 e prospect is charming, we
 ve a pile of grass, unless
 ead under foot, the flowers,

which are then in all their beauty, ex-
 hibit to the view the most ravishing
 sight, being diversified without end: one
 in particular I have remarked, which
 would adorn the most beautiful parterre;
 I mean *the lion's mouth* (*geulle de Lion.*)

These meadows afford not only a
 charming prospect to the eye, they,
 moreover, plentifully produce excellent
 simples, (equally with tall woods) as
 well for the purposes of medicines as of
 dying. When all these plants are burnt,
 and a small rain comes on, mushrooms
 of an excellent flavour succeed to them,
 and whiten the surface of the meadows
 all over.

Those rising meadows and tall forests
 abound with buffaloes, elk, and deer,
 with turkeys, partridges, and all kinds
 of game; consequently wolves, cata-
 mounts, and others carnivorous animals
 are found there; which in following the
 other animals, destroy and devour such
 as are too old or too fat; and when the
 Indians go a hunting, these animals are
 sure to have the ossal, or hound's fee,
 which make them follow the hunters.

These high lands naturally produce
 mulberry trees, the leaves of which are
 very grateful to the silk-worm. Indigo,

in like manner, grows there along the thickets, without culture. There also a native tobacco is found growing wild, for the culture of which, as well for other species of tobacco, these lands are extremely well adapted. Cotton is also cultivated to advantage : Wheat and flax thrive better and more easily there, than lower down towards the capital, the land there being too fat ; which is the reason that, indeed, oats come there to a greater height than in the lands I am speaking of ; but the cotton and the other productions are neither so strong nor so fine there, and the crops of them are often less profitable, tho' the soil be of an excellent nature.

In fine, those high lands to the east of the Mississippi, from Manchac to the river Wabache, may and ought to contain mines. We find in them, just at the surface, iron and pitcoal, but no appearance of silver mines ; gold there may be, copper also, and lead.

Let us return to Manchac, where I quitted the Mississippi ; which I shall cross, in order to visit the west side, as I have already done the east. I shall begin with the west coast, which resembles that to the east ; but is still more dry and

anner, grows there along the
without culture. There also a
acco is found growing wild,
culture of which, as well for
ies of tobacco, these lands are
well adapted. Cotton is also
to advantage : Wheat and
better and more easily there,
down towards the capital, the
being too fat ; which is the
indeed, oats come there
right than in the lands I am
; but the cotton and the o-
ctions are neither so strong
here, and the crops of them
s profitable, tho' the soil be
ent nature.

those high lands to the east
issippi, from Manchac to the
che, may and ought to con-
We find in them, just at
iron and pitcoal, but no ap-
silver mines ; gold there
per also, and lead.

urn to Manchac, where I
Mississippi ; which I shall
er to visit the west side, as
done the east. I shall be-
west coast, which resembles
it ; but is still more dry and

barren on the shore. On quitting that
coast of white and crystal sand, in or-
der to go northward, we meet five or
six lakes, which communicate with one
another, and which are, doubtless, re-
mains of the sea. Between these lakes
and the Mississippi, is an earth accumu-
lated on the sand, and formed by the
ooze of that river, as I said ; between
these lakes there is nothing but sand, on
which there is so little earth, that the
sand-bottom appears to view ; so that
we find there but little pasture, which
some strayed buffaloes come to eat ;
and no trees, if we except a hill on the
banks of one of these lakes, which is all
covered with evergreen oaks, fit for
ship-building. This spot may be a league
in length by half a league in breadth ;
and was called Barataria, because enclo-
ed by these lakes and their outlets, to
form almost an island on dry land.

These lakes are stored with monstrous
carp, as well for size as for length ;
which slip out of the Mississippi and its
muddy stream, when overflowed, in
search of clearer water. The quantity
of fish in these lakes is very surprising,
especially as they abound with vast num-
bers of allegators. In the neighbour-

hood of these lakes are some petty nations of Indians, who partly live on this amphibious animal.

Between these lakes and the bank of the Mississippi, there is some thin herbage, and among others, natural hemp, which grows like trees, and very branched. This did not surprize us, as each plant stands very distant from the other. Hereabouts we find little wood, unless when we approach the Mississippi.

To the west of these lakes we find excellent lands, covered in many places with open woods of tall trees, through which one may easily ride on horseback; and here we find some buffaloes, which only pass through these woods because the pasture under the trees is bitter; and therefore prefer the grass of the meadows, which lying exposed to the rays of the sun, becomes thereby more favoury.

In going still farther west, we meet much thicker woods, because this country is extremely well watered; we here find numbers of rivers, which fall into the sea; and what contributes to the fertility of this land, is the number of brooks, that fall into these rivers.

This country abounds with deer and

these lakes are some petty na-
ndians, who partly live on this
us animal.

On these lakes and the bank of
Missippi, there is some thin her-
among others, natural hem-
ows like trees, and very branch-
s did not surprize us, as each
nds very distant from the other.
ts we find little wood, unless
approach the Missippi.

West of these lakes we find ex-
nds, covered in many places
woods of tall trees, through
we may easily ride on horseback ;
we find some buffaloes, which
through these woods because
e under the trees is bitter ;
efore prefer the grass of the
which lying exposed to the
ne sun, becomes thereby more

g still farther west, we meet
ker woods, because this coun-
emely well watered ; we here
ers of rivers, which fall into
nd what contributes to the
this land, is the number of
at fall into these rivers.

untry abounds with deer and

other game ; buffaloes are rare ; but if
promises great riches to such as shall in-
habit it, from the excellent quality of its
lands. The Spaniards, who bound us
on that side, are jealous enough. But
the great quantities of land they possess
in America, have made them lose sight
of settling there, tho' acquainted there-
with before us. However, they took
some steps to traverse our designs, when
they saw, we had some thoughts that
way. But they are not settled there as
yet ; and who could hinder us from
making advantageous settlement in that
country.

I resume the banks of the Missippi,
above the lakes, and the lands above the
fork, which, as I have sufficiently ac-
quainted the reader, are none of the
best ; and I go up to the north, in order
to follow the same method, I observed
in describing the nature of the lands to
the east.

The banks of the Missippi are of a
fat and strong soil ; but far less subject
to inundations than the lands of the east.
If we proceed a little way westward, we
meet land gradually rising, and of an
excellent quality ; and even meadows,
which we might well affirm to be

boundless if they were not intersected by little groves. These meadows are covered with buffaloes and other game, which live there so much the more peaceably, as they are neither hunted by men, who never frequent these countries; nor disquieted by wolves or tigers, which keep more to the north.

The country I have just described is such as I have represented it, till we come to New-Mexico: it rises gently enough, near the Red river, which bounds it to the North till we reach a high land, which was no more than five or six league; it is almost flat, having but some eminences at some considerable distance from each other. We also meet some mountains of a middling height, which appear to contain something more than bare stone.

This high land begins at some leagues from the Mississippi, and continues to New-Mexico; it lowers towards the Red-River, by windings, where it is diversified alternately with meadows and woods. The top of this height, on the contrary, has scarce any wood. A fine grass grows between the stones, which are common there. The buffaloes come to feed on this grass, when the rains,

if they were not intersected by
 es. These meadows are co-
 th buffaloes and other game,
 e there so much the more
 as they are neither hunted by
 o never frequent these coun-
 disquieted by wolves or tigers,
 p more to the north.
 nity I have just described is such
 e represented it, till we come to
 ico: it rises gently enough,
 Red river, which bounds it
 th till we reach a high land,
 s no more than five or six
 t is almost flat, having but
 enences at some considerable
 rom each other. We also
 e mountains of a middling
 hich appear to contain some-
 e than bare stone.
 h land begins at some leagues
 Mississippi, and continues to
 ico; it lowers towards the
 , by windings, where it is
 alternately with meadows and
 he top of this height, on the
 as scarce any wood. A fine
 s between the stones, which
 n there. The buffaloes come
 n this grass, when the rains,

drive them out of the plains; otherwise
 they go but little thither, because they
 find there are neither water, nor salt-
 petre.

We are to remark, by the bye, that
 all cloven-footed animals are extremely
 fond of salt, and that Louisiana in ge-
 neral contains a great deal of saltpetre.
 And thus we are not to wonder, if the
 buffalo, the elk, and the deer, have a
 greater inclination to some certain places
 than to others, tho' they are there of-
 ten hunted. We ought therefore to
 conclude, there is more saltpetre in
 those places, than in such as they haunt
 but rarely. This is what made me re-
 mark, that these animals after their or-
 dinary repast, sail but rarely to go to
 the torrents, where the earth is cut,
 and even to the clay; which they lick,
 especially after rain, because they there
 find a taste of salt, which allures them
 thither. Most of those, who have made
 this remark, imagine, that these ani-
 mals eat the earth; whereas in such
 places they only go in quest of the salt,
 which to them is so strong an allure-
 ment, as to make them bid defiance to dangers,
 in order to get at it.

The banks of the Red River, towards

its confluence, are pretty low, and sometimes drowned by the inundations of the Mississippi; but above all, the north side, which is but a marshy land for upwards of ten leagues, in going up to the Nachitoches, till we come to the Black river, which falls into the Red. This last takes its name from the colour of its sand, which is red in several places. It is also called the Marne, a name given it by some Geographers, but unknown in the country. Some call it the river of the Nachitoches, because they dwell on its banks. But the appellation, Red river, has remained to it.

Between the Black river and the Red river the soil is but very light, and even sandy, where we find more firs than other trees; we observe therein some marshes. But those lands, tho' not altogether barren, if cultivated, would be none of the best. They continue such along the banks of the river, only to the rapid part of it, thirty leagues from the Mississippi. This rapid part cannot justly be called a fall; however, we can scarce go up with oars, when laden, but must land and tow. I imagine, if the waterman's pole was used, as on the Loire and other rivers in France,

nce, are pretty low, and some-
 owned by the inundations of the
 i; but above all, the north
 ch is but a marshy land for up-
 ten leagues, in going up to
 itoches, till we come to the
 er, which falls into the Red.
 takes its name from the colour
 d, which is red in several places,
 called the Marne, a name given
 ne Geographers, but unknown
 untry. Some call it the river
 achitoches, because they dwell
 nks. But the appellation, Red
 s remained to it.

en the Black river and the Red
 soil is but very light, and even
 here we find more firs than
 es; we observe therein some

But those lands, tho' not al-
 barren, if cultivated, would
 of the best. They continue
 ng the banks of the river, only
 rapid part of it, thirty leagues
 e Mississippi. This rapid part
 uly he called a fall; however,
 carce go up with oars, when
 ut mult land and tow. I ima-
 he waterman's pole was used, as
 oire and other rivers in France,

this obstacle would be easily surmount-
 ed.

The South side of this river, quite to
 rapid part, is entirely different from the
 opposite side. It is something higher, and
 rises in proportion as it approaches to the
 height I have mentioned; the quality is
 also very different. This land is good
 and light, appears disposed to receive all
 the culture imaginable, in which we
 may assuredly hope to succeed. It na-
 turally produces beautiful fruit trees and
 vines in plenty; it was on that side
 muscadine grapes were found. The
 back parts have neater wood, and the
 meadows intersected with tall forests.
 On that side the fruit trees of the coun-
 try are common, above all, the hickory
 and walnut trees, which are sure indica-
 tions of a good soil.

From the rapid part to the Nachi-
 toches, the lands on both sides of this
 river sufficiently resemble those I have
 just mentioned. To the left, in going
 up, there is petty nation, called the
 Avoyelles, and known only for the ser-
 vices they have done the colony by the
 horses, oxen, and cows they have bro't
 from New-Mexico for the service of the
 French in Louisiana. I am ignorant

what view the Indians have in that commerce ; but I well know, that notwithstanding the fatigues of the journey, these cattle, one with another, did not come, after deducting all expences, and even from the second hand, but to two pistoles a-head ; whence I ought to presume, that they have them cheap in New-Mexico. By means of this nation we have in Louisiana very beautiful horses, of the species of those of Old Spain, which, if managed or trained, people of the first rank might ride. As to the oxen and cows, they are the same as those of France, and both are at present very common in Louisiana.

The south side conveys into the Red river only little brooks. On the north side, and pretty near the Nachitoches, there is, as is said, a spring of water very salt, running only four leagues. This spring, as it comes out of the earth, forms a little river, which, during the heats, leaves some salt on its banks. And what may render this more credible is, that the country, whence it takes its rise, contains a great deal of mineral salt, which discovers itself by several springs of salt water, and by two salt lakes, of which I shall presently speak. In fire,

the Indians have in that com-
t I well know, that notwith-
the fatigues of the journey,
one with another, did not
deducting all expences, and
the second hand, but to two
head; whence I ought to pre-
t they have them cheap in
co. By means of this nation
in Louisiana very beautiful
the species of those of Old
rich, if managed or trained,
the first rank might ride. As
and cows, they are the same
France, and both are at pre-
common in Louisiana.

th side conveys into the Red
little brooks. On the north
pretty near the Nachitoches,
is said, a spring of water ve-
ning only four leagues. This
it comes out of the earth,
the river, which, during the
es some salt on its banks. And
render this more credible is,
untry, whence it takes its rise,
great deal of mineral salt,
overs itself by several springs
er, and by two salt lakes, of
all presently speak. In fire,

in going up we come to the French fort
of the Nachitoches, built in an island,
formed by the Red River.

This island is nothing but sand, and
that so fine that the wind drives it like
dust; so that the tobacco attempted to
be cultivated there at first was loaded
with it. The leaf of the tobacco hav-
ing a very fine down, easily retains this
sand, which the least breath of air dis-
fuses every where; which is the reason,
that no more tobacco is raised in this
island, but provisions only, as maize,
potatoes, pumpions, &c. which cannot
be damaged by the sands.

M^r de St. Dennis commanded at this
place, where he insinuated himself into
the good graces of the natives in such a
manner, that, although they prefer death
to slavery, or even to the government of
a sovereign, however mild, yet twenty
or twenty-five nations were so attached
to his person, that, forgetting they were
born free, they willingly surrendered
themselves to him; the people and their
chiefs would all have him for their grand
chief; so that at the least signal, he
could put himself at the head of thirty
thousand men, drawn out of those na-
tions, which had of their own accord

submitted themselves to his orders; and that only by sending them a paper on which he drew the usual hieroglyphics that represent war among them, with a large leg, which denoted himself. This was still the more surprising, as the greatest part of these people were on the Spanish territories, and ought rather to have attached themselves to them, than to the French, if it had not been for the personal merits of the commander.

At the distance of seven leagues from the French post, the Spanish have settled one, where they have resided ever since M. de la Motte governor of Louisiana, agreed to that settlement. I know not by what fatal piece of policy the Spaniards were allowed to make this settlement; but I know, that, if it had not been for the French, the natives would never have suffered the Spaniards to settle in that place.

However, several French were allured to this Spanish settlement, doubtless imagining that the rains which come from Mexico, rolled and brought gold along with them, which would cost nothing but the trouble of picking up.—But to what purpose serves this beautiful metal, but to make the people vain

themselves to his orders; and by sending them a paper on which he drew the usual hieroglyphics to denote war among them, with a peace which denoted himself. This was the more surprising, as the chiefs of these people were on the frontiers of the territories, and ought rather to have defended themselves to them, than to have submitted, if it had not been for the orders of the commander.

At a distance of seven leagues from the post, the Spanish have settled where they have resided ever since. La Motte governor of Louisiana was not allowed to make this fatal piece of policy the result of his knowledge, but I know, that, if it had been for the French, the nation never have suffered the same to settle in that place.

Several French were allured to the Spanish settlement, doubtless by the rains which come from the north, rolled and brought gold down, which would cost no trouble of picking up.—The purpose serves this beautiful purpose to make the people vain

and idle among whom it is so common, and to make them neglect the culture of the earth, which constitutes true riches, by the sweets it procures to man and by the advantages it furnishes to commerce.

Above the Nachitoches dwell the Cadodaquious whose scattered villages assume different names. Pretty near one of the villages was discovered a silver-mine, which was found to be rich, and of every pure metal. I have seen the assay of it, and its ore is very fine. This silver lies concealed in small invisible particles, in a stone of a chestnut colour, which is spongy, pretty light, and easily calcinable: However, it yields a great deal more than it promises to the eye. The assay of this ore was made by a Portuguese, who had worked at the mines of New Mexico, whence he made his escape. He appeared to be master of his business, and afterwards visited other mines farther North, but he ever gave the preference to that of the *Red River*.

This river, according to the Spaniards, takes its rise in 22 degrees of North-east; forms a great elbow or winding to the East. then proceeding thence South-east, at which place we begin to know it,

it comes and falls into the Mississippi, about 31 ° and odd minutes.

I said above, that the Black river discharges itself into the Red, ten leagues above the confluence of this last with the Mississippi. We now proceed to resume that river, and follow its course, after having observed that the fish of all those rivers, which communicate with the Mississippi are the same as to species, but far better in the Red and Black rivers, because their water is clearer and better than that of the Mississippi which they always quit with pleasure. Their delicate and finer flavour may also arise from the nourishment they take in those rivers.

The lands, of which we are going to speak, are to the North of the Red River. They may be distinguished into two parts, which are to the right and left of the Black River, in going up to its source, and even as far as the river of the Arkansas. It is called the Black River, because its depth gives it that colour, which is, moreover, heightened by the woods which line it throughout the Colony. All the rivers have their banks covered with woods; but this river, which is very narrow, is almost quite covered by the

and falls into the Mississippi, a
and odd minutes.

above, that the Black river dis-
solves itself into the Red, ten leagues
confluence of this last with the

We now proceed to resume
and follow its course, after
served that the fish of all those
which communicate with the Mis-
sissippi are the same as to species, but far
the Red and Black rivers, because
the water is clearer and better than
the Mississippi which they ab-
sorb with pleasure. Their deli-
cious flavour may also arise from
the aliment they take in these ri-

vers, of which we are going to
ascend to the North of the Red River.

The river is distinguished into two parts;
one to the right and left of the
river, in going up to its source,
as far as the river of the Ar-

It is called the Black River, be-
cause its depth gives it that colour, which
is heightened by the woods
which cover it throughout the Colony. All
the rivers have their banks covered with
but this river, which is very nar-
row, almost quite covered by the

branches, and rendered of a dark colour
on the first view. It is sometimes called
the river of the Wachitas, because its
banks were occupied by a nation of that
name, who are now extinct. I shall con-
tinue to call it by its usual name.

The lands which we directly find on
both sides, are low, and continue thus
for the space of three or four leagues,
till we come to the river of the Teanfas,
thus denominated from a nation of that
name, which dwelt on its banks. This river
of the Teanfas is properly speaking but a
channel formed by the overflowings of
the Mississippi, has its course almost pa-
rallel thereto, and separates the low lands
from the higher. The lands between
the Mississippi and river of the Teanfas
are the same as in the Lower Louisiana.

The lands we find in going up the
Black river are nearly the same, as well
for the nature of the soil, as for their
good qualities. They are rising grounds,
extending in length, and which in ge-
neral may be considered as one very
extensive meadow, diversified with little
groves, and cut only by the Black river
and little brooks, bordered with wood
up to their sources. Buffaloes and deer
are seen in whole herds there. In ap-

proaching to the river of the Arkansas, deer and pheasants begin to be very common ; and the same species of game is found there, as is to the east of the Mississippi, in like manner wood-strawberries, simples, flowers and mushrooms. The only difference is, that this side of the Mississippi is more level, there being no lands so high and so very different from the rest of the country. The woods are like those to the east of the Mississippi, except that to the west there are more walnut and hickory trees. These last are another species of walnut, the nut of which are more tender, and invite to these parts a greater number of parrots. What we have just said, holds in general of this west side, let us now consider what is peculiar thereto.

After we have gone up the Black river about thirty leagues, we find to the left a brook of salt water, which comes from the west. In going up this brook about two leagues, we meet with a lake of salt water, which may be two leagues in length, by one in breadth. A league higher up to the north, we meet with another lake of salt water, almost as long and broad as the former.

This water, doubtless, passes through

to the river of the Arkansas, pheasants begin to be very common. The same species of game is here, as is to the east of the Mississippi, in like manner wood-strawberries, flowers and mushrooms. The difference is, that this side of the Mississippi is more level, there being no high and so very different from the country. The woods are to the east of the Mississippi, but to the west there are more walnut and hickory trees. These last are varieties of walnut, the nut of which is tender, and invite to these parts a number of parrots. What we have said, holds in general of this country, let us now consider what is the case hereto.

We have gone up the Black river thirty leagues, we find to the west of salt water, which comes from the west. In going up this brook thirty leagues, we meet with a lake, which may be two leagues long, by one in breadth. A league to the north, we meet with a lake of salt water, almost as long as the former. The water, doubtless, passes through

some mines of salt; it has the taste of salt, without that bitterness of the sea-water. The Indians come a great way off to this place, to hunt in winter, and make salt. Before the French trucked coppers with them, they made upon the spot pots of earth for this operation. And they returned home, loaded with salt and dry provision.

To the east of the Black river we observe nothing that indicates mines; but to the west one might affirm there should be some, from certain marks, which might well deceive pretended connoisseurs. As for my part, I would not warrant that there were two mines in that part of the country, which seems to promise them. I should rather be led to believe, that there are mines of salt, at no great depth from the surface, which, by their volatile and acid spirits prevent the growth of plants in those spots.

Ten or twelve leagues above this brook is a creek, near which those Natchez retreated who escaped being made slaves with the rest of their nation, when the Messrs. Perier extirpated them on the east side of the river, by order of the Court.

The river takes its rise to the north west of its confluence, and pretty near

the river of the Arkansas, into which falls a branch from this rise or source, by means of which we have a communication from the one to the other with a middling carriage. This communication with the river of Arkansas is upwards of an hundred leagues from the post of that name. In other respects, this Black river might carry a boat throughout, if cleared of the wood fallen into its bed, which generally traverses it from one side to the other. It receives some brooks, and abounds in excellent fish and in alligators.

I make no doubt but these lands are very fit to bear and produce every thing that can be cultivated with success on the east of the Mississippi, opposite to this side, except the canton or quarter between the river of the Arkansas and the Mississippi, that land being subject to inundation, would be proper only for rice.

I imagine we may now pass on to the north of the river of the Arkansas, which takes its rise in the mountains adjoining to the east of Santa Fe.

It afterwards goes a little to the north, from whence it comes down to the south, a little lower than its source. In

of the Arkansas, into which
 ch from this rise or source;
 of which we have a com-
 from the one to the other
 dling carriage. This commu-
 th the river of Arkansas is up-
 n hundred leagues from the
 name. In other respects,
 ver might carry a boat through-
 ed of the wood fallen into
 hich generally traverses it
 e side to the other. It re-
 e brooks, and abounds in
 and in alligators.
 o doubt but these lands are
 ar and produce every thing
 ultivated with success on the
 Mississippi, opposite to this
 the canton or quarter be-
 ver of the Tacnfas and the
 that land being subject to
 ould be proper only for rice.
 we may now pass on to the
 river of the Arkansas, which
 n the mountains adjoining
 Santa Fe.
 ls goes a little to the north,
 it comes down to the
 lower than its source. In

this manner it forms a line parallel almost
 with the Red river.

That river has a cataract, or fall, at a-
 bout an hundred and fifty leagues from
 its confluence. Before we come to this
 fall, we find a quarry of red-veined mar-
 ble, one of slate, and one of plaster.—
 Some travellers, have there observed
 grains of gold in a little brook. But as
 they happened to be going in quest of a
 rock of emeralds, they deigned not to a-
 muse themselves with picking up parti-
 cles of gold.

This river of the Arkansas is stored
 with fish; has a great deal of water; ha-
 ving a course of two hundred and fifty
 leagues, and can carry large boats quite
 to the cataract. Its banks are covered
 with woods, as are all the other rivers
 of the country. In its course it receives
 several brooks, or rivulets, of little con-
 sequence, unless we except that called
 the White river, and which discharges
 itself into the curve or elbow of that we
 are speaking of, and below its fall.

In the whole tract north of this river,
 we find plains that extend out of sight,
 which are vast meadows, intersected by
 groves, at no great distance from one
 another, which are tall woods, where

we might easily hunt the stag, great numbers of which, as also of buffaloes, are found here. Deer also are very common.

From having seen these animals frightened at the least noise, especially at the report of a gun, I thought of a method to hunt them, in the manner the Spaniards of New-Mexico do, which would not scare them at all, and which would turn to the great advantage of the inhabitants, who have this game in plenty in their country. This hunting might be set about in winter, from the beginning of October when the meadows are burnt, till the month of February.

This hunting is neither expensive nor fatiguing: Horses are had very cheap in that country, and maintained almost for nothing. Each hunter is mounted on horseback, and armed with a crescent somewhat open, whose inside should be pretty sharp, the top of the outside to have a socket, to put in a handle: Then a number of people on horseback go in quest of a herd of buffaloes, and always attack them with the wind in their backs. As soon as they smell a man, it is true, they run away; but at the sight of the horses they will moderate their fears, and not precipitate

it easily hunt the stag, great
of which, as also of buffaloes,
here. Deer also are very com.

having seen these animals
at the least noise, especially
out of a gun, I thought of a
to hunt them, in the manner
wards of New-Mexico do, which
t scare them at all, and which
n to the great advantage of the
s, who have this game in plenty
untry. This hunting might be
winter, from the beginning of
when the meadows are burnt,
nth of February.

ing is neither expensive nor
Horses are had very cheap in
y, and maintained almost for
ch hunter is mounted on horse-
med with a crescent somewhat
inside should be pretty sharp,
he outside to have a socket, to
ndle : Then a number of peo-
eback go in quest of a herd
and always attack them with
their backs. As soon as they
it is true, they run away ;
ght of the horses they will
ir fears, and not precipitate

their flight ; whereas the report of a gun
frightens them so as to make them run at full
speed. In this chase, the lightest would run
fast enough ; but the oldest, and even the
young of two or three years old, are so fat,
that their weight would make them soon
be overtaken. Then the armed hunter
may strike the buffalo with his crescent
above each ham, and cut his tendons ;
after which he is easily mastered. Such
as never saw a buffalo, will hardly be-
lieve the quantity of fat they yield. But it
ought to be considered, that continuing
day and night in plentiful pastures of
the finest and most delicious grass, they
must soon fatten, and that from their
youth. Of this we have an instance in
a bull at the Natchez, which was kept
till he was two years old, and grew so
fat, that we were obliged to kill him,
and got nigh an hundred and fifty pounds
of tallow from him. His neck was near
as big as his body.

From what I have said, it may be
judged, what profit such hunters might
make of the skins and tallow of those
buffaloes ; the hides would be large, and
their wool be still an additional benefit.
I may add, that this hunting of them
would not diminish the species, those

fat buffaloes being ordinarily the prey of wolves, as being too heavy to be able to defend themselves.

Besides, the wolves would not find their account in attacking them in herds. It is well known, that the buffaloes range themselves in a ring, the strongest without, and the weakest within. The strong, standing pretty close together, present their horns to the enemy, who dare not attack them in this position.— But wolves, like all other animals, have their particular instinct, in order to procure their necessary food. They come so near, that the buffaloes smell them some way off, which makes them run for it. The wolves then advance with a pretty equal pace, till they observe the fattest out of breath. These they attack before and behind; one of them seizes on the buffalo by the hind-quarter, and overturns him, the others strangle him.

The wolves being many in a body, kill not what is sufficient for one alone, but as many as they can before they begin to eat. For this is the manner of the wolf, to kill ten times more than he needs, especially when he can do it with ease, and without interruption.

Though the country I describe has

does being ordinarily the prey of
as being too heavy to be able to
hemselfes.

es, the wolves would not find
count in attacking them in herds.
rell known, that the buffaloes
emselfes in a ring, the strongest
and the weakest within. The
standing pretty close together,
their horns to the enemy, who
attack them in this position.—
ves, like all other animals, have
rticular instinct, in order to pro-
eir necessary food. They come
that the buffaloes smell them some
which makes them run for it. The
then advance with a pretty equal
ll they observe the fattest out of
These they attack before and
one of them seizes on the buffalo
hind-quarter, and overturns him,
rs strangle him.

wolves being many in a body,
what is sufficient for one alone,
many as they can before they be-
t. For this is the manner of the
o kill ten times more than he
pecially when he can do it with
d without interruption.

gh the country I describe has

very extensive plains, I pretend not to
say, that there are no rising grounds or
hills; but they are more rare there than
elsewhere, especially on the west side,
In approaching to New Mexico, we ob-
serve great hills and some mountains,
some of which are pretty high.

I ought not to omit mentioning here,
that from the low lands of Louisiana,
the Mississippi has several shoal banks of
sand in it, which appear very dry upon
the falling of the waters, after the inun-
dations. These banks extend more or
less in length; some of them half a
league, and not without a considerable
breadth. I have seen the Natchez, and
other Indians, sow a sort of grain, which
they called Choupichoul*, on these dry
sand banks. This sand received no man-
ner of culture; and the women and
children covered the grain any how with
their feet, without taking any great pains
about it. After this sowing, and man-
ner of culture, they waited till Autumn,
when they gathered a great quantity of
the grain. It was prepared like millet,
and very good to eat. This plant is
what is called *Belle Dame Sauvage*—
which thrives in all countries, but re-

* He seems to mean *Buck-wheat*.

quires a good soil. And whatever good quality the soil in Europe may have, it shoots but a foot and a half high ; and yet, on this sand of the Mississippi, it rises, without any culture, three feet and a half, and four feet high. Such is the virtue of this sand all up the Mississippi ; or, to speak more properly, for the whole length of its course ; if we except the accumulated earth of the Lower Louisiana, across which it passes, and where it cannot leave any dry sand-banks ; because it is straitened within its banks, which as the river itself raises, continually augments.

In all the groves and little forests I have mentioned, and which lie to the North of the river of the Arkansas, pheasants, partridges, snipes, and wood-cocks, are in such great numbers, that those who are most fond of this game, might easily satisfy their longing, as also every other species of game. Small birds are still vastly more numerous.

Thirty leagues above the river of the Arkansas, to the north, and on the same side of the Mississippi, we find the river St. Francis.

The lands adjoining to it are always covered with herds of buffaloes, not-

good soil. And whatever good the soil in Europe may have, it is not at a foot and a half high; and this sand of the Mississippi, without any culture, three feet deep, and four feet high. Such is the nature of this sand all up the river; or, to speak more properly, the whole length of its course; if except the accumulated earth of the Louisiana, across which it passes, where it cannot leave any dry sand, because it is straitened within the banks, which as the river itself raises, it continually augments.

In the groves and little forests I have mentioned, and which lie to the west of the river of the Arkansas, pheasants, partridges, snipes, and woodcock are in such great numbers, that the Indians are most fond of this game, and easily satisfy their longing, as also for other species of game. Small birds are vastly more numerous.

Many leagues above the river of the Arkansas, to the north, and on the same side of the Mississippi, we find the river Arkansas.

The lands adjoining to it are always covered with herds of buffaloes, not-

withstanding they are hunted every winter in those parts. For, it is this river, that is, in its neighbourhood, that the French and Canadians go and make their salt provisions for the inhabitants of the capital, and of the neighbouring plantations, in which they are assisted by the native Arkansas, whom they hire for that purpose. When they are upon the spot, they chuse a tree, fit to make a pettyauger, which serves for a salting or powdering-tub in the middle, and is closed at the two ends, where only is left room for a man at each extremity.

The trees they choose are ordinarily the poplar, which grew on the banks of the water. It is a white wood, soft and binding. The pettyaugers might be made of other wood, because such are to be had pretty large; but either too heavy for pettyauger, or too apt to split.

The species of wood in this part of Louisiana is tall oak; the fields abound with four sorts of walnut, especially the black kind; so called, because it is a dark brown colour, bordering on black; this sort grows very large.

There are, besides, fruit trees in this country, and it is there we begin to find commonly papaws. We have also here

other trees of every species, more or less, according as the soil is favourable. These lands in general are fit to produce every thing the low land can yield, except rice and indigo. But in return, wheat thrives extremely well. The vine is found every where; the mulberry tree is in plenty; tobacco grows fine, and of a good quality; as do cotton and garden plants. So that by leading an easy and agreeable life in that country, we may at the same time be sure of a good return to Europe.

The land which lies between the Mississippi and the river St. Francis, is full of rising grounds and mountains of a middling height, which, according to the ordinary indications, contain several mines. Some of them have been assayed, among the rest, the mine of Marameg, on the little river of that name; the other mines appear not to be so rich, nor so easy to be worked. There are some lead mines, and others of copper, as is pretended.

The mine of Marameg, which is silver, is pretty near the confluence of the river which gives it name; which is a great advantage to those who would work it, because they might easily, by that means, have their goods from Eu-

ees of every species, more or less, as the soil is favourable. These in general are fit to produce every the low land can yield, except rice. But in return, wheat thrives very well. The vine is found everywhere; the mulberry tree is in plenty; tobacco grows fine, and of a good quality; as do cotton and garden plants. By leading an easy and agreeable life in that country, we may at the same time be sure of a good return to Europe. The land which lies between the Mississippi and the river St. Francis, is full of good grounds and mountains of a moderate height, which, according to the very indications, contain several mines. Some of them have been assayed; among the rest, the mine of Marameg, on the little river of that name; other mines appear not to be so rich, but easy to be worked. There are also lead mines, and others of copper, but not yet attended.

The mine of Marameg, which is situated pretty near the confluence of the river which gives it name; which is a great advantage to those who would work it, because they might easily, by the means, have their goods from Eu-

rope. It is situate about five hundred leagues from the sea.

I shall continue on the West side of the Mississippi, and to the north of the famous river Missouri, which we are now to cross. This river takes its rise at eight hundred leagues distance, as is alleged, from the place where it discharges itself into the Mississippi. Its waters are muddy, thick, and charged with nitre, and these are the waters that make the Mississippi muddy down to the sea, its waters being extremely clear above the confluence of the Mississippi. The reason is, that the former rolls its waters over a land of pretty firm soil; the latter, on the contrary, flows across rich and clayey lands, where little stone is to be seen; for though the Missouri comes out of a mountain, which lies to the north-west of New-Mexico, we are told, that all the lands it passes through are generally rich, that is, low meadows, and lands without stone.

This great river, which seems ready to dispute the preeminence with the Mississippi, receives in its long course many rivers and brooks, which considerably augment its waters. But except those, that have received their names from

some nation of Indians, who inhabit their banks, there are very few of their names we can be well assured of, each traveller giving them different appellations. The French having penetrated up the Missouri only for about three hundred leagues at most, and the rivers, which fall into its bed being only known by the Indians, it is of little importance what names they may bear at present, being besides in a country but little frequented. The river, which is the best known is that of the Osages, so called from a nation of that name, dwelling on its banks. It falls into the Missouri, pretty near its confluence.

The largest known river which falls into the Missouri, is that of the Canzas; which runs for near two hundred leagues in a very fine country. According to what I have been able to learn about the course of this great river, from its source to the Canzas, it runs from West to East; and from that nation it falls down to the Southward, where it receives the river of the Canzas, which comes from the West; there it forms a great elbow, which terminates in the neighbourhood of the Missouri; then it resumes its course to the South-east, to lose at last both its name

tion of Indians, who inhabit
 the banks, there are very few of them
 we can be well assured of, each
 giving them different appella-
 tions. The French having penetrated
 the Missouri only for about three
 leagues at most, and the river,
 all into its bed being only known
 to the Indians, it is of little importance
 what names they may bear at present,
 besides in a country but little fre-

The river, which is the best
 name that of the Osages, so called
 in honour of that nation, denoting
 the banks. It falls into the Missouri,
 near its confluence.

The largest known river which falls in-
 to the Missouri, is that of the Canzas;
 it runs for near two hundred leagues
 in a fine country. According to what
 we have been able to learn about the course
 of the great river, from its source to the
 mouth, it runs from West to East; and
 at that nation it falls down to the
 south, where it receives the river of
 the Canzas, which comes from the West;
 it forms a great elbow, which ter-
 minates in the neighbourhood of the Mis-
 souri, when it resumes its course to the
 East, to lose at last both its name

and waters in the Mississippi, about four
 leagues lower down than the river of the
 Illinois.

There was a French Post for some time
 in an island a few leagues in length, over
 against the Missouri; the French fortified
 in this fort at the East point, and called it
 Fort Orleans. M. de Bourgant command-
 ed there a sufficient time, to gain the
 friendship of the Indians of the countries
 adjoining to this great river. He brought
 about a peace among all those nations,
 who before his arrival were all at war;
 the nation to the North being more war-
 like than those to the South.

After the departure of that Command-
 ant, they murdered all the garrison, not
 a single Frenchman having escaped to
 carry the news: nor could it be ever
 known, whether it happened through the
 fault of the French, or through treache-
 ry.

As to the nature of that country, I
 refer to M. de Bourmont's Journal, an
 extract from which I have given above.
 That is an original account, signed by all
 the officers, and several others of the Com-
 pany, which I thought was too prolix to
 give at full length, and for that reason I
 have only extracted from it what relates to

the people and the quality of the soil, and traced out the route to those who may have a mind to make that journey ; and even this we found necessary to abridge in this translation.

In this journey of M. de Bourgmont, mention is only made of what we meet with, from Fort Orleans, from which we set out, in order to go to the Padoucas. Wherefore I ought to speak of a thing curious enough to be related, and which is found on the banks of Missouri ; and that is, a pretty high cliff, upright from the edge of the water. From the middle of this cliff juts out a mass of red stone with white spots, like Porphyry, with this difference, that what we are speaking of is almost soft and tender, like sand-stone. It is covered with another sort of stone of no value ; the bottom is an earth, like that of other rising grounds. This stone is easily worked, and bears the most violent fire. The Indians of the country have contrived to strike off pieces thereof with their arrows, and after they fall in the water plunge for them. When they can procure pieces thereof large enough to make pipes, they fashion them with knives and awls. This pipe has a socket two or three inches long,

d the quality of the soil, and
e route to those who may
l a make that journey ; and
found necessary to abridge in
on.

urney of M. de Bourgmont,
only made of what we meet
Fort Orleans, from which we
nder to go to the Padoucas.
ought to speak of a thing
gh to be related, and which
e banks of Missouri ; and
etty high cliff, upright from
e water. From the middle
juts out a mass of red stone
spots, like Porphyry, with
e, that what we are speak-
most soft and tender, like
It is covered with another
of no value ; the bottom is
that of other rising grounds.
e easily worked, and bears
lent fire. The Indians of
have contrived to strike
reof with their arrows, and
l in the water plunge for
they can procure pieces
enough to make pipes, they
with knives and awls. This
et two or three inches long,

and on the opposite side the figure of an
hatchet ; in the middle of all is the boot,
or bowl of the pipe, to put the tobacco
in. These sort of pipes are highly esteem-
ed among them.

All to the North of the Missouri is en-
tirely unknown, unless we will give cre-
dit to the relations of different travellers ;
but to which of them shall we give the
preference ; In the first place, they al-
most all contradict each other. And
then, men of the most experience treat
them as impostors. And therefore I choose
to pay no regard to any of them.

Let us therefore now repass the Missis-
sippi, in order to resume the description
of the lands to the east, and which we
quitted at the Wabache. This river is
distant from the sea four hundred and
sixty (three hundred) leagues : it is rec-
oned to have four hundred leagues in
length, from its source to its confluence
into the Mississippi. It is called Wa-
bache, though, according to the usual
method, it ought to be called the Ohio,
or beautiful river ; seeing the Ohio is
known under that name in Canada, be-
fore its confluence was known. And as
the Ohio takes its rise at a greater dis-
tance off than the three others, which

mix together, before they empty themselves into the Mississippi, this should make the others lose their names; but custom has prevailed on this occasion.* The first river known to us, which falls into the Ohio, is that of the Miamis, which takes its rise towards lake Erie.

It is by this river of the Miamis that the Canadians come to Louisiana. For this purpose they embark on the river St. Laurence, go up this river, pass the cataracts quite to the bottom of lake Erie, where they find a small river, on which they also go up to a place, called the Carriage of the Miamis; because that people come and take their effects, and carry them on their backs for two leagues from thence to the banks of their name, which I just said empties itself into the Ohio. From thence the Canadians go down that river, enter the Wabache, and at last the Mississippi, which brings them to New-Orleans, the capital of Louisiana. They reckon eighteen hundred leagues† from the capital of Canada to that of Louisiana, on account of the great turns and windings.

* But not among the English; we call it the Ohio.

† It is but nine hundred leagues.

, before they empty them-
 the Mississippi, this should
 others lose their names;
 as prevailed on this occasi-
 st river known to us, which
 Ohio, is that of the Miamis;
 its rise towards lake Erie,
 s river of the Miamis that
 come to Louisiana. For
 hey embark on the river
 go up this river, pass the
 e to the bottom of lake
 hey find a small river, on
 o go up to a place, cal-
 ledge of the Miamis; be-
 ple come and take their
 rry them on their backs
 s from thence to the banks
 which I just said empties
 Ohio. From thence the
 down that river, enter the
 at last the Mississippi,
 hem to New-Orleans, the
 ouisiana. They reckon
 ed leagues from the ca-
 to that of Louisiana; on
 great turns and windings
 ang the English; we call

s hundred leagues,

they are obliged to take.

The river of the Miamis is thus the
 first to the north, which falls into Ohio;
 then that of the Chaouanons to the south;
 and lastly, that of the Cherokees; all
 which together empty themselves into
 the Mississippi. This is what we call
 the Wabache, and what in Canada and
 New-England they call the Ohio. This
 river is beautiful, greatly abounding in
 fish and navigable almost up to its source.

To the north of this river Canada,
 which inclines more to the east than the
 source of the Ohio, and extends to the
 country of the Illinois. It is of little im-
 portance to dispute here about the limits
 of these two neighbouring colonies, as
 they both appertain to France. The
 lands of the Illinois are reputed to be a
 part of Louisiana; we have there a post
 near a village of that nation, called Ta-
 marouas.

The country of the Illinois is extreme-
 ly good, and abounds with buffalo and
 other game. On the north of the Wa-
 bache we first begin to see the Orignaux;
 a species of animals which are said to
 partake of the buffalo and the stag; they
 have, indeed, been described to me to be
 much more clumsy than the stag. Their

horns have something of the stag, but are shorter and more massy; the meat of them, as they say, is pretty good.—Swans, and other water-fowl, are common in these countries.

The French part of the Illinois is, of all the colony, that in which, with the greatest ease, they grow wheat, rye, and other like grain, for the sowing of which you need only to turn the earth in the slightest manner; that slight culture is sufficient to make the earth produce as we can reasonably desire. I have been assured, that in the last war, when the flour from France was scarce, the Illinois sent down to New Orleans upwards of eight hundred thousand weight thereof in one winter. Tobacco also thrives there, but comes to maturity with difficulty. All the plants transported thither from France succeed well, as do also the fruits.

In those countries there is a river, which takes its name from the Illinois. It was by this river that the first travellers came from Canada into the Mississippi.—Such as come from Canada, and have business only on the Illinois, pass that way yet. But such as want to go directly to the sea, go down the river of the

something of the stag, but are more maffy; the meat of they fay, is pretty good.— other water-fowl, are com- e countries.

ch poft of the Illinois is, of y, that in which, with the y, they grow wheat, rye, and rain, for the fowing of which ly to turn the earth in the nner; that flicht culture is make the earth produce as onably defire. I have been t in the laft war, when the France was fcarce, the Illi- own to New Orleans upwards dred thoufand weight thereof inter. Tobacco alfo thrives comes to maturity with diffi- the plants tranfported thither e fucceed well, as do alfo the

countries there is a river, its name from the Illinois. It river that the firft travellers Canada into the Miffiffippi.— come from Canada; and have ly on the Illinois, pafs that But fuch as want to go direct- a, go down the river of the

Miamis into the Wabache, or Ohio and from thence into the Miffiffippi.

In this country there are mines, and one in particular called De la Mothe's mine, which is filver, the affay of which has been made; as alfo of two lead mines, fo rich at firft, as to vegetate, or fhoot, a foot and a half at leaft out of the earth.

The whole continent north of the river of the Illinois is not much frequented, confequently little known. The great extent of Louifiana makes us prefume, that thefe parts will not foon come to our knowledge, unlefs fome curious perfon fhould go thither to open mines, where they are faid to be in great numbers, and very rich.

The fettlement at Mobile was the firft feat of the colony in this province. It was the refidence of the commandant general, the commiffary general, the ftaff-officers, &c. As veffels could not enter the river Mobile, and there was a fmall harbour at Ifle Dauphine, a fettlement was made fited to the harbour, with a guard-house for its fecurity: fo that thefe two fettlements may be faid to have made but one; both on account of their proximity,

and necessary connexion with each other. The settlement of Mobile, ten leagues, however, from its harbour, lies on the banks of the river of that name; and Isle Dauphine, over against the mouth of that river, is four leagues from the coast.

Though the settlement of Mobile be the oldest, yet it is far from being the most considerable. Only some inhabitants remained there, the greatest part of the first inhabitants having left it, in order to settle on the river Mississippi, ever since New-Orleans became the capital of the colony. That old post is the ordinary residence of a king's lieutenant, a regulating commissary, and a treasurer. The fort, with four bastions, terraced and palisadoed, has a garrison.

This post is a check upon the nation of Chactaws, and cuts off the communication of the English with them; it protects the neighbouring nations, and keeps them in our alliance; in fine, it supports our peltry trade, which is considerable with the Chactaws and other nations.

The same reason, which pointed out the necessity of this post, with respect to the Chactaws, also shewed the necessity

connexion with each other. The mouth of Mobile, ten leagues from its harbour, lies on the river of that name; and the fort, over against the mouth of the river, is four leagues from the

the settlement of Mobile because it is far from being the most considerable. Only some inhabitants remained there, the greatest number of the first inhabitants having left it, to settle on the river Mississippi. New-Orleans became the capital colony. That old post is the residence of a king's lieutenant, a commissary, and a treasury, with four bastions, terminated by a palisade, has a garrison.

It is a check upon the nation, and cuts off the communication with the English with them; it protects the neighbouring nations, and keeps them in alliance; in fine, it supports the trade, which is considerable with the Choctaws and other nations.

The reason, which pointed out the necessity of this post, with respect to the Choctaws, also shewed the necessity

of building a fort at Tombecbe, to check the English in their ambitious views on the side of the Chickasaws. That fort was built only since the war with the Chickasaws in 1736.

Near the river Mobile stands the small settlement of the Palsea-Ogoulas; which consists only of a few Canadians, lovers of tranquillity, which they prefer to all advantages they could reap from commerce. They content themselves with a frugal country life, and never go to New Orleans but for necessities.

From that settlement quite to New Orleans, by the way of lake St. Louis, there is no post at present. Formerly, and just before the building of the capital, there were the old and new Biloxi settlements, which have deserved an oblivion as lasting, as their duration was short.

To proceed with order and perspicuity, we will go up to the Mississippi from its mouth.

Fort Balise is at the entrance of the Mississippi, in 20° of longitude. This fort is built on an isle, at one of the mouths of the Mississippi. Though there are but seventeen feet water in the channel, I have seen vessels of five hundred

and necessary connexion with each other. The settlement of Mobile, ten leagues, however, from its harbour, lies on the banks of the river of that name; and Isle Dauphine, over against the mouth of that river, is four leagues from the coast.

Though the settlement of Mobile be the oldest, yet it is far from being the most considerable. Only some inhabitants remained there, the greatest part of the first inhabitants having left it, in order to settle on the river Mississippi, ever since New-Orleans became the capital of the colony. That old post is the ordinary residence of a king's lieutenant, a regulating commissary, and a treasurer. The fort, with four bastions, terraced and palisadoed, has a garrison.

This post is a check upon the nation of Chaftaws, and cuts off the communication of the English with them; it protects the neighbouring nations, and keeps them in our alliance; in fine, it supports our peltry trade, which is considerable with the Chaftaws and other nations.

The same reason, which pointed out the necessity of this post, with respect to the Chaftaws, also shewed the necessity

connexion with each other.
 of Mobile, ten leagues,
 its harbour, lies on the
 river of that name; and
 over against the mouth
 is four leagues from the

the settlement of Mobile be
 it is far from being the
 able. Only some inhabi-
 ted there, the greatest
 inhabitants having left it,
 tle on the river Mississippi,
 w-Orleans became the capi-
 ony. That old post is the
 tence of a king's lieutenant,
 commissary, and a treasur-
 t, with four bastions, ter-
 rified, has a garrison.
 is a check upon the nation
 , and cuts off the communi-
 English with them; it pro-
 neighbouring nations, and keeps
 alliance; in fine, it supports
 trade, which is considerable
 actaws and other nations.
 reason, which pointed out
 of this post, with respect to
 ys, also shewed the necessity

of building a fort at Tombecbe, to check
 the English in their ambitious views on
 the side of the Chicafaws. That fort
 was built only since the war with the Chi-
 cawaws in 1736.

Near the river Mobile stands the small
 settlement of the Pafca-Ogoulas; which
 consists only of a few Canadians, lovers
 of tranquility, which they prefer to all
 advantages they could reap from com-
 merce. They content themselves with a
 frugal country life, and never go to New
 Orleans but for necessities.

From that settlement quite to New Or-
 leans, by the way of lake St. Louis, there
 is no post at present. Formerly, and
 just before the building of the capital,
 there were the old and new Biloxi set-
 tlements, which have deserved an obli-
 vion as lasting, as their duration was short.

To proceed with order and perspicuity,
 we will go up to the Mississippi from its
 mouth.

Fort Balise is at the entrance of the
 Mississippi, in 20° of longitude. This
 fort is built on an isle, at one of the
 mouths of the Mississippi. Though there
 are but seventeen feet water in the chan-
 nel, I have seen vessels of five hundred

tons enter into it. I know not why this entrance is left so neglected, as we are not in want of able Engineers in France, in the Hydraulic branch, a part of the Mathematics, to which I have most applied myself. I know it is no easy matter so to deepen or hollow the channel of a bar, that it may never after need clearing, and that the expences run high: But my zeal for promoting the advantage of this colony having prompted me to make reflections on the passes, or entrances of the Mississippi, and being perfectly well acquainted both with the country and the nature of the soil, I dare flatter myself, I may be able to accomplish it, to the great benefit of the province, and acquit myself therein with honour, at a small charge and in a manner not to need repetition.

I say, Fort Balise is built upon an island; a circumstance, I imagine, sufficient to make it understood, that this Fort is irregular; the figure and extent of this small island not admitting it to be otherwise.

In going up the Mississippi, we meet with nothing remarkable before we come to the *Detour aux Anglois*, the English Reach. In that part the river takes a

to it. I know not why this
 left so neglected, as we are
 of able Engineers in France,
 public branch, a part of the
 to which I have most ap-
 I know it is no easy matter
 or hollow the channel of a
 may never after need clearing,
 expences run high: But my
 noting the advantage of this
 prompted me to make re-
 the passes, or entrances of
 i, and being perfectly well
 both with the country and the
 the soil, I dare flatter myself,
 le to accomplish it, to the
 of the province, and acquit
 n, with honour, at a small
 in a manner not to need re-

Baile is built upon an island;
 ce, I imagine, sufficient to
 rstood, that this Fort is ir-
 figure and extent of this small
 mitting it to be otherwise.
 up the Mississippi, we meet
 g remarkable before we come
 r *aux Anglois*, the English
 that part the river takes a

compass; so that the same wind,
 which was before fair, proves contrary in
 this elbow, or reach. For this reason it
 was thought proper to build two forts at
 that place, one on each side of the river,
 to check any attempts of strangers. These
 forts are more than sufficient to oppose
 the passage of an hundred sail; as ships
 can go up the river, only one after an-
 other, and can neither cast anchor, nor
 come on shore to moor.

It will, perhaps, be thought extraordi-
 nary, that ships cannot anchor in this
 place. I imagine the reader will be of my
 opinion, when I tell him, the bottom is
 only a soft mud, or ooze, almost entirely
 covered with dead trees, and this for up-
 wards of an hundred leagues. As to put-
 ting on shore, it is equally impossible and
 needless to attempt it; because the place
 where these forts stand, is but a neck of
 land between the river and the marshes.
 Now it is impossible for a shallop, or ca-
 noe, to come near to moor a vessel, in
 sight of a fort well guarded or for an
 enemy to throw up a trench in a neck of
 land so soft. Besides, the situation of
 the two forts is such, that they may in a

short time receive succours, both from the inhabitants, who are on the interior edge of the crescent, formed by the river, and from New-Orleans, which is very near thereto.

The distance from this place to the capital is reckoned six leagues by water, and the course nearly circular; the winding, or reach, having the figure of a C almost close. Both sides of the river are lined with houses, which afford a beautiful prospect to the eye; however, as this voyage is tedious by water, it is often performed on horseback by land.

The great difficulties attending the going up the river under full, particularly at the English Reach, for the reasons mentioned, put me upon devising a very simple and cheap machine, to make vessels go up with ease quite to New-Orleans. Ships are sometimes a month in the passage from Balise to the capital; whereas by my method, they would not be eight days, even with a contrary wind; and thus ships would go four times quicker than by towing, or turning it. This machine might be deposited at Balise, and delivered to the vessel, in order to go up the current, and be returned again on its

ceive succours, both from
s, who are on the interior
rescent, formed by the river,
ew-Orleans, which is very

ce from this place to the ca-
ned six leagues by water,
se nearly circular; the wind-
, having the figure of a C

Both sides of the river are
ouses, which afford a beauti-
to the eye; however, as
s tedious by water, it is of-
ed on horseback by land.

difficulties attending the go-
iver under sail, particularly
ish Reach, for the reasons
put me upon devising a very
cheap machine, to make ves-
with ease quite to New-Or-
s are sometimes a month in
from Balise to the capital;
my method, they would not
s, even with a contrary wind;
ps would go four times quick-
owing, or turning it. This
ght be deposited at Balise, and
the vessel, in order to go up
and be returned again on its

setting sail. It is besides proper to ob-
serve, that this machine would be no de-
triment to the forts, as they would always
have it in their power to stop the vessels
of enemies, who might happen to use it.

New-Orleans, the capital of the colony,
is situated to the east, on the banks of the
Mississippi, in 30° of north latitude. At
my first arrival in Louisiana, it existed
only in name, for on my landing I under-
stood, M. de Bienville, commandant
general, was only gone to mark out the
spot; whence he returned three days af-
ter our arrival at Isle Dauphine.

He pitched upon this spot in prefer-
ence to many others, more agreeable and
commodious; but for that time this was
a place proper enough. Besides, it is
not every man that can see so far as some
others. As the principal settlement was
then at Mobile, it was proper to have
the capital fixed at a place from which
there could be an easy communication
with this post. And thus a better choice
could not have been made, as the town
being on the banks of the Mississippi, ves-
sels, though of a thousand tons, may lay
their sides close to the shore, even at low
water; or at most, need only lay a small

bridge, with two of their yards, in order to load or unload; to roll barrels and bales, &c. without fatiguing the ship's crew. This town is only a league from St. John's Creek, where passengers take water for Mobile, in going to which they pass lake St. Louis, and from thence all along the coast; on a communication which was necessary at that time.

I should imagine, that if a town was at this day to be built in the province, a rising ground would be pitched upon, to avoid inundations; besides, the bottom should be sufficiently firm, for bearing grand stone-edifices.

Such as have been a good way in the country, without seeing stone, or the least pebble, in upwards of a hundred leagues extent, will doubtless say, such a proposition is impossible, as they never observed stone proper for building in the parts they travelled over. I might answer, and tell them, they have eyes, and see not. I narrowly considered the nature of this country, and found quarries in it; and if there were any in the colony, I ought to find them, as my condition and profession of architect should have procured me the knowledge of them.

two of their yards, in order to unload; to roll barrels and without fatiguing the ship's crew, town is only a league from the river, where passengers take their baggage, in going to which they go to St. Louis, and from thence to the coast; on a communication being necessary at that time.

Imagine, that if a town was at first built in the province, a rising ground would be pitched upon, to avoid the river; besides, the bottom should be very firm, for bearing grand

There have been a good way in the town without seeing stone, or the river in upwards of a hundred leagues; it will doubtless say, such a situation is impossible, as they never thought proper for building in the river, or travelling over. I might answer them, they have eyes, and have narrowly considered the nature of the country, and found quarries there were any in the colony, and I told them, as my condition and the situation of architect should have procured knowledge of them.

After giving the situation of the Capital, it is proper I describe the order in which it is built.

The place of arms is in the middle of that part of the town which faces the river; in the middle of the ground of the place of arms stands the parish-church, called St. Louis, where the Capuchins officiate, whose house is to the left of the church. To the right stand the prison, or jail, and the guard-house: Both sides of the place of arms are taken up by two bodies or rows of barracks. This place stands all open to the river.

All the streets are laid out both in length and breadth by the line, and intersect and cross each other at right angles. The streets divide the town into sixty-six Isles, eleven along the river lengthwise, or in front, and six in depth: Each of those Isles is fifty square toises, and each again divided into twelve Emplacements, or compartments, for lodging as many families. The Intendant's house stands behind the barracks on the left; and the magazine, or warehouse-general behind the barracks on the right, on viewing the town from the river side. The Governor's house stands in the middle of that part of the

town from which we go from the place of arms to the habitation of the Jesuits, which is near the town. The house of the Ursulin nuns is quite at the end of the town, to the right ; as is also the hospital of the sick, of which the nuns have the inspection. What I have just described faces the river.

On the banks of the river runs a causey or mole, as well on the side of the town as on the opposite side, from the English Reach quite to the town, and about ten leagues beyond it ; which makes about fifteen or sixteen leagues on each side the river ; and which may be travelled in a coach or on horseback, on a bottom as smooth as a table.

The greatest part of the houses is of brick ; the rest are of timber and brick.

The length of the causeys, I just mentioned, is sufficient to shew, that on these two sides of the Mississippi there are many habitations standing close together ; each making a causey to secure his ground from inundations, which fail not to come every year with the spring ; And at the time, if any ships happen to be in the harbour of New Orleans, they speedily set sail ; because the prodigious quantity of dead

m which we go from the place
to the habitation of the Jesuits,
near the town. The house of the
nuns is quite at the end of the
rke right ; as is also the hospi-
tick, of which the nuns have
tion. What I have just describ-
the river.

banks of the river runs a can-
ole, as well on the side of the
on the opposite side, from the
each quite to the town, and a-
leagues beyond it ; which makes
een or sixteen leagues on each
ver ; and which may be travel-
ach or on horseback, on a bot-
ooth as a table.

eastest part of the houses is of
rest are of timber and brick.
gth of the causeys, I just men-
sufficient to thew, that on these
of the Mississippi there are many
standing close together ; each
causey to secure his ground from
s, which fail not to come eve-
th the spring : And at the time,
s happen to be in the harbour
leans, they speedily set sail ;
e prodigious quantity of dead

wood, or trees torn up by the roots, which
the river brings down would lodge before
the ship, and break the stoutest cables.

At the end of St. John's Creek, on the
banks of the Lake St. Louis, there is a re-
doubt, and a guard to defend it.

From the Creek to the town, a part of
its banks is inhabited by planters ; in like
manner as are the long banks of another
Creek : The habitations of this last go un-
der the name of Gentility.

After these habitations, which are up-
on the Mississippi quite beyond the Can-
nes brulees, burnt Canes, we meet none
till we come to the Oumas, a petty na-
tion so called. This settlement is incon-
siderable, tho, one of the oldest next to
the Capital. It lies on the east of the
Mississippi.

The Baton Rouge is also on the east
side of the Mississippi, and distant twen-
ty-six leagues from New Orleans. It was
formerly the Grant of M. Artaguette d'I-
ron : It is there we see the famous cypress
tree, of which a ship-carpenter offered to
make two pettyaugers, one of sixteen,
the other of fourteen tons. Some one of
the first adventurers, who landed in this
quarter, happened to say, that tree would

make a fine walking-stick ; and, as cypress is a red wood, it was afterwards called le **Baton Rouge**. Its height could never be measured, it rises so out of sight.

Two leagues higher up than le **Baton Rouge**, was the grant of M. **Paris du Vernai**. This settlement is called **Bayou Ogoulas**, from a nation of that name, which formerly dwelt here. It is on the west side of the **Mississippi**, and twenty eight leagues from **New Orleans**.

At a league on this side of **Pointe Coupee**, are les **Petits Ecores**, (little Cliffs,) where was the grant of the **Marquis de Mezieres**. At this grant were a Director and under-director ; but the Surgeon found out the secret of remaining sole master. The place is very beautiful, especially behind les **Petits Ecores**, where we go up by a gentle ascent. Near these Cliffs, a rivulet falls into the **Mississippi**, into which a spring discharges its waters, which so attract the buffalo's, that they are very often found on its banks. 'Tis a pity this ground was deserted ; there was enough of it to make a very considerable grant : A good water-mill also might be built on the brook I just mentioned.

At forty leagues from **New Orleans**

ne walking-stick ; and, as cypress
wood, it was afterwards called le
pouge. Its height could never be
seen, it rises so out of sight.

leagues higher up than le Baton
was the grant of M. Paris du
This settlement is called Bayou
from a nation of that name,
formerly dwelt here. It is on the
of the Mississippi, and twenty
leagues from New Orleans.

league on this side of Pointe Cou-
les Petits Ecores, (little Cliffs,)
is the grant of the Marquis de

At this grant were a Directeur
or-director ; but the Surgeon
t the secret of remaining sole
The place is very beautiful, es-
pecially behind les Petits Ecores, where
by a gentle ascent. Near these
rivulet falls into the Mississippi,
a spring discharges its waters,
attract the buffalo's, that they
often found on its banks. 'Tis a
round was deserted ; there was
it to make a very considerable
good water-mill also might be
the brook I just mentioned.

y leagues from New Orleans

lies la Pointe Coupee, so called, because
the Mississippi made there an elbow, or
winding, and formed the figure of a cir-
cle, open only about an hundred and odd
toises, thro' which it made itself a shorter
way and where all its water runs at
sent. This was not the work of M.
alone : Two travellers coming down
Mississippi, were forced to stop at
this place ; because they observed
distance the surf, or waves, to be very
high, the wind bearing against the current
and the river being out, so that they durst
not venture to proceed. Just by them
passed a rivulet, caused by the inundation
which might be a foot deep, by four or
five feet broad, more or less. One of the
travellers, seeing himself without any
thing to do, took his gun and followed the
course of this rivulet, in hopes of killing
some game. He had not gone an hun-
dred toises, before he was put into a ve-
ry great surprize, on perceiving, a great
opening, as when one is just getting out
of a thick forest. He continues to ad-
vance, sees a large extent of water, which
he takes for a lake ; but turning on his
left, he espies les Petits Ecores, just men-
tioned, and by experience he knew he

R

must go ten leagues to get thither : Upon this he knew, these were the waters of the river. He runs to acquaint his companion : This last wants to be sure of it : Certain as they are both of it, they resolve, that it was necessary to cut away the roots, which stood in the passage and so level the more elevated places. They attempted at length to pass their pettyauger through, by pushing it before them. They succeeded beyond their expectation: the water, which came on, aided them as much by its weight, as by its depth, which was increased by the obstacle it met in its way : And they saw themselves in a short time in the Mississippi, ten leagues lower down than they were an hour before ; or than they would have been, if they had followed the bed of the river, as they were formerly constrained to do.

This little labour of our travellers moved the earth : the roots being cut away in part proved no longer an obstacle to the course of the water ; the slope or descent in this small passage was equal to that in the river for the ten leagues of the compass it took ; in fine, Nature, tho' feebly aided, performed the rest. The first time I went up the river, its entire

leagues to get thither : Up-

view, these were the waters

He runs to acquaint his

This last wants to be sure of

as they are both of it, they

it was necessary to cut away

which stood in the passage and

more elevated places. They

length to pass their petty au-

by pushing it before them.

ded beyond their expectation:

which came on, aided them as

weight, as by its depth, which

d by the obstacle it met in its

they saw themselves in a short

Mississippi, ten leagues lower

they were an hour before ;

would have been, if they had

bed of the river, as they were

restrained to do.

labour of our travellers mo-

a : the roots being cut away

ed no longer an obstacle to

the water ; the slope or de-

small passage was equal to that

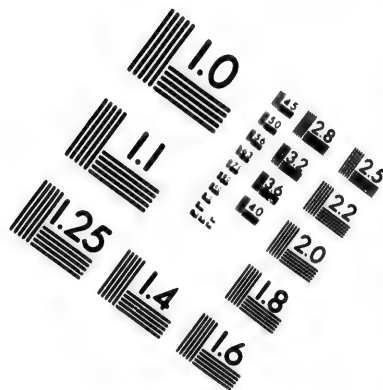
r for the ten leagues of the

took ; in fine, Nature, tho'

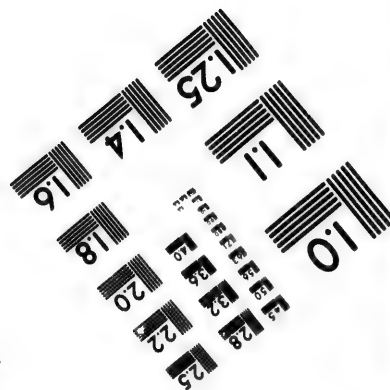
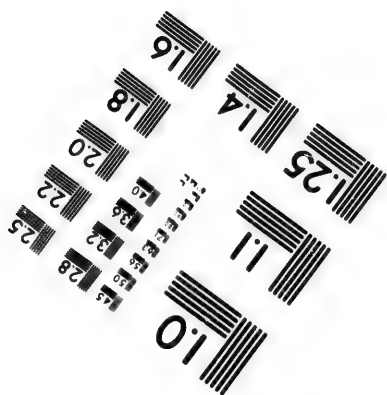
, performed the rest. The

went up the river, its entire





6"



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1984

body of water passed thro' this part; and tho' the channel was only made six years before, the old bed was almost filled with the ooze, which the river had there deposited; and I have seen trees growing there of an astonishing size, that one might wonder, how they should come to be so large in so short a time.

In this spot, which is called la Pointe Coupee, the Cut-point, was the grant of M. de Meaube, at present one of the most considerable ports of the colony, with a fort, a garrison, and an officer to command there. The river is, on each side, lined with inhabitants, who make a great deal of tobacco. There an Inspector resides, who examines and receives it, in order to prevent the merchants being defrauded. The inhabitants of the west side have high lands behind them, which form a very fine country, as I have observed above.

Twenty leagues above this Cut-point, and sixty leagues from New Orleans, we meet with the Red River. In an island, formed by that river, stands a French post with a fort, a garrison, its Commandant and Officers. The first inhabitants, who settled there, were some soldiers of that

post, discharged after their time of serving was expired, who set themselves to make tobacco in the island. But the fine sand, carried by the wind on the leaves of the tobacco, made it of a bad quality, which obliged them to abandon the island and settle on the continent, where they found a good soil, on which they made better tobacco. This post is called the Nachitoches, from a nation of that name, settled in the neighbourhood. At this M. de St Denis commanded.

Several inhabitants of Louisiana, allured thither by the hopes of making soon great fortunes, because distant only seven leagues from the Spaniards, imagined the abundant treasures of New Mexico would pour in upon them. But in this they happened to be mistaken; for the Spanish post, called the Adaies, has less money in it than the poorest village in Europe; the Spaniards being ill clad, ill fed and always ready to buy goods of the French on credit: which may be said in general of the Spaniards of New Mexico, amidst their mines of gold and silver. This we are well informed of by our merchants, who have dealt with the Spaniards of this Post, and found their

habitations and way of living to be very mean, and more so than those of the French.

From the confluence of this Red River, in going up the Mississippi, as we have hitherto done, we find, about thirty leagues higher up, the Post of the Natchez.

Let not the reader be displeased, at my saying often, nearly, or about so many leagues: We can ascertain nothing certain as to the distances in a country where we travel only by water. Those who go up the Mississippi, having more trouble, and taking more time than those who go down, reckon the route more or less long, according to the time in which they make their voyage; besides, when the water is high, it covers passes, which often shorten the way a great deal.

The Natchez are situate in about 32 ° odd minutes of North Latitude, and 280 ° of Longitude. The fort at this Post stands two hundred feet perpendicular above low-water mark. From this fort the point of view extends West of the Mississippi quite to the horizon, that is, on the side opposite to that where the fort stands, tho' the west side be covered with

woods; because the foot of the fort stands much higher than the trees. On the same side with the fort, the country holds at a pretty equal height, and declines only by a gentle, and almost imperceptible slope, insensibly losing itself from one eminence to another.

The nation which gave name to this Post, inhabited this very place, at a league from the landing-place on the Mississippi, and dwelt on the banks of a rivulet, which has only a course of four or five leagues to that river. All travellers, who passed and stopped here, went to pay a visit to the natives, the Natchez. The distance of the league they went to the river is through so fine and good a country, the natives themselves were so obliging and familiar, and the women so amiable, that all travellers failed not to make the greatest encomiums both on the country, and on the native inhabitants.

The just commendations bestowed upon them, drew thither inhabitants in such numbers, as to determine the company to give orders for building a fort there, as well to support the French already settled, and those who should afterwards come thither as to be a check on that na-

oot of the fort stands
e trees. On the same
e country holds at a
and declines only by
imperceptible slope,
from one eminence

gave name to this
ery place, at a league
ce on the Mississip-
e banks of a rivulet,
urse of four or five

All travellers, who
ere, went to pay a
the Natchez. The
e they went to the
nd good a country,
es were so obliging
e women so amiable,
iled not to make the
both on the country,
habitants.

edations bestowed up-
er inhabitants in such
ermine the company
uilding a fort there,
he French already set-
ho should, afterwards
e a check on that na-

tion. The garrison consisted only of be-
tween thirty and forty men, a captain, a
lieutenant, under-Lieutenant, and two
Serjeants.

The company had there a warehouse
for the supply of the inhabitants, who
were daily increasing, in spite of all the
efforts of one of the principal superiors,
who put all imaginable obstacles in the
way: And notwithstanding the progress
this settlement made, and the encomi-
ums bestowed upon it, and which it de-
served, God in his providence gave it up
to the rage of its enemies, in order to
take vengeance of the sins committed
there; for without mentioning those,
who escaped the general massacre, there
perished of them upwards of five hundred.

Forty leagues higher up than the Nat-
chez is the river Yafou. The grant of
M. le Blanc, minister, or secretary at war,
was settled there, four leagues from the
Mississippi, as you go up this little river.
There a fort stands, with a company of
men, commanded by a captain, a Lieu-
tenant, under-Lieutenant, and two Ser-
jeants. This company, together with
the servants, were in the pay of the Mar-
shall.

This post was very advantageously situated, as well for the goodness of the air, as the quality of the soil, like to that of the Natchez, - as for the landing-place, which was very commodious, and for the commerce with the natives, if our people but knew how to gain, and preserve their friendship. But the neighbourhood of Chicafaws, ever fast friends of the English, and ever instigated by them to give us uneasiness, almost cut off any hopes of succeeding. This Post was, on these accounts threatened with utter ruin, sooner or later; as actually happened in 1722 by means of those wretched Chicafaws; who came in the night and murdered the people in the settlements that were made by two serjeants out of the fort. But a boy, who was scalped by them, was cured, and escaped with life.

Sixty miles higher up than Youfouz, and at the distance of two hundred leagues from New-Orleans, dwell the Arkansas, to the west of the Mississippi. At the entrance of the river which goes by the name of that nation, there is a small fort, which defends that Post, which is the second of the colony in point of time.

advantageously situated, the goodness of the air, the soil, like to that of the landing-place, commodious, and for the natives, if our people join, and preserve their neighbourhood of our friends of the Eng-
 ted by them to give us cut off any hopes of
 Port was, on these ac- with utter ruin, soon- ally happened in 1722
 wretched Chickasaws; ight and murdered the ments that were made
 out of the fort. But a calped by them, was
 with life.

er up than Youfouz, of two hundred leagues, dwell the Arkansas, e Mississippi. At the
 er which goes by the n, there is a small fort, t Port, which is the se- y in point of time.

It is a great pity, so good and fine a country is distant from the sea upwards of two hundred leagues. I cannot omit mentioning, that wheat thrives extremely well here, without our being obliged ever to manure the land; and I am so prepos- sess'd in its favour, that I persuade myself, the beauty of the climate has a great in- fluence on the character of the inhabi- tants, who are at the same time very gentle and very brave. They have ever had an inviolable friendship for the French, un- influenced thereto either by fear, or views of interest; and live with the French near them as brethren rather than as neigh- bours.

In going from the Arkansas to the Illi- nois, we met with the river St. Francis, thirty leagues more to the North, and on the west side of the Mississippi. There a small fort has been built since my return to France. To the East of the Mississippi, but more to the North, we also meet, at about thirty leagues the river Margot, near the steep banks of Prud'homme; There a fort was also built, called Assumption, for undertaking an expedition against the Chickasaws, who are nearly in the same latitude. These two forts, after the ex-

pedition, were entirely demolished by the French because they were thought to be no longer necessary. It is however, probable enough, that this fort Assumption would have been a check upon the Chickasaws, who are always roving in those parts. Besides, the steep banks of Prud'homme contain iron and pitcoal. On the other hand, the country is very beautiful, and of an excellent quality, abounding with plains and meadows, which favour the excursions of the Chickasaws, and which they will ever continue to make upon us, till we have the address to divert them from their commerce with the English.

I
fix
lar
tai
an
tin
go
lig
bu
it.
tre
on
it
de
nu
fe

irely demolished by the
 ey were thought to be
 ry. It is however, pro-
 at this fort Assumption
 een a check upon the
 are always roving in
 des, the steep banks of
 ain iron and pitcoal. On
 the country is very beau-
 excellent quality, abound-
 nd meadows, which fa-
 ns of the Chickasaws, and
 ver continue to make up-
 ve the address to divert
 conunmerce with the

AN ACCOUNT
 OF
 LOUISIANA.

PART III.
Natural History.

INDIAN corn is the natural product of this country. It grows upon a stalk six, seven, and eight feet high; the ear is large, and about two inches diameter, containing sometimes seven hundred grains and upwards; and each stalk bears sometimes six or seven ears, according to the goodness of the ground. The black and light soil is that which agrees best with it; but strong ground is not so favourable to it.

Wheat, rye, barley, and oats grow extremely well in Louisiana; but I must add one precaution in regard to wheat; when it is sown by itself, it grows at first wonderfully; but when it is in flower, a great number of drops of red water may be observed at the bottom of the stalk within

fix inches of the ground, which are collected there during the night, and disappear at sun-rising. This water is of such an arid nature that in a short time it consumes the stalk, and the ear falls before the grain is formed. To prevent this misfortune, which is owing to the too great richness of the soil, or perhaps a bug, the best method is to mix with the wheat you intend to sow, some rye and dry mould, in such a proportion that the mould shall be equal to the rye and wheat together.

The rice which is cultivated in that country was brought from Carolina. It succeeds surprizingly well, and experience has there proved, contrary to the common notion, that it does not want to have its foot always in the water. It has been sown in the flat country without being flooded, and the grain that was reaped was full grown, and of a very delicate taste. The fine relish need not surprize us; for it is so with all plants and fruits that grow without being watered and at a distance from watry places. Two crops may be reaped from the same plants but the second is poor if it be not flooded.

The first settlers found in the country,

beans, which are collected at night, and disappear in the water is of such an nature that in a short time it causes the ear to fall before it. To prevent this misfortune, owing to the too great heat, or perhaps a bug, the wheat is mixed with the wheat you intend to dry, and dry mould, in that the mould shall be mixed with the wheat together.

It is cultivated in that manner from Carolina. It grows very well, and experienced, contrary to the opinion that it does not want to be in the water. It has

been found in the flat country without the grain that was sown, and of a very delicate relish need not suffer so with all plants and without being watered from watery places. Two of the same plants are poor if it be not flood-

found in the country,

French beans of various colours, particularly red and black, and they have been called beans of forty days, because they require no longer to grow and to be fit to eat green. The Apalachian beans are so called because we received them from a nation of the natives of that name. They probably had them from the English of Carolina, whither they had been brought from Guinea. Their stalks spread upon the ground to the length of four or five feet. They are like the other beans, but much smaller, and of a brown colour, having a black ring round the eye, by which they are joined to the shell. These beans boil tender, and have a tolerable relish, but they are sweetish, and somewhat insipid.

The Sweet potatoes are roots more commonly long than thick; their form is various, and their fine skin is like that of the Irish potatoes. In their substance and taste they very much resemble sweet chestnuts. They are cultivated in the following manner; the earth is raised in little hills or high furrows about a foot and a half broad, that by draining the moisture, the roots may have a better relish. The small potatoes being cut in

little pieces with an eye in each, four or five of those pieces are planted on the head of the hills. In a short time they push out shoots, and these shoots being cut off about the middle of August within seven or eight inches of the ground, are planted double, cross-ways, in the crown of other hills. The roots of these last are the most esteemed, not only on account of their fine relish, but because they are easier kept during the winter. In order to preserve them during that season, they dry them in the sun as soon as they are dug up, and then lay them up in a close and dry place, covering them first with ashes, over which they lay dry mould. They boil them, or bake them, or roast them on hot coals like chestnuts; but they have the finest relish when baked or roasted. They are eat dry, or cut into small slices in milk without sugar, for they are sweet of themselves. Good sweatmeats are also made of them, some Frenchmen have drawn brandy from them.

The Cushtaws are a kind of pompion. There are two sorts of them, the one round, and the other in the shape of a hunting horn. These last are the best,

an eye in each, four or
 pieces are planted on the
 In a short time they
 and these shoots being
 middle of August with-
 t inches of the ground,
 ble, cross-ways, in the
 hills. The roots of these
 esteemed, not only on
 fine relish, but because
 kept during the winter.
 serve them during that
 them in the sun as soon
 up, and then lay them
 dry place, covering them
 over which they lay dry
 boil them, or bake them,
 hot coals like chestnuts;
 the finest relish when ba-
 They are eat dry, or cut
 in milk without sugar,
 eet of themselves. Good
 also made of them, some
 ave drawn brandy from

vs are a kind of pompion.
 sorts of them, the one
 e other in the shape of a
 These last are the best,

being of a more firm substance, which
 makes them keep much better than the
 others; their sweetness is not so insipid,
 and they have fewer seeds. They make
 sweetmeats of these last, and use both
 kinds in soup; they make fritters of them,
 and roast them on the coals, and in all
 ways of cooking they are good and pala-
 table.

All kinds of melons grow admirably
 well in Louisiana. Those of Spain, of
 France, of England, which last are called
 white melons, are there infinitely finer
 than in the countries from whence they
 have their name; but the best of all are the
 water melons.

All kinds of greens and roots which
 have been brought from Europe into that
 colony succeed well, provided they be
 planted in a soil suited to them; for it is
 certainly absurd to think that onions and
 other bulbous plants should thrive there,
 in a soft and watery soil, whenever where
 else, they require a dry and light earth.

I shall now proceed to give an account
 of the fruit trees of this colony, and shall
 begin with the Vine, which is so com-
 mon in Louisiana, that whatever way you
 walk, from the sea coast, for 500 leagues

northwards, you cannot proceed an hundred steps without meeting with one ; but unless the vine-shoots should happen to grow in an exposed place, it cannot be expected that their fruit should ever come to perfect maturity. The trees to which they twine are so high, and so thick of leaves, and the intervals of underwood are so filled with reeds, that the sun cannot warm the earth or ripen the fruit of this shrub. I will not undertake to describe all the kinds of grapes which this country produces : it is even impossible to know them all ; I shall only speak of three or four.

The first sort that I shall mention does not perhaps deserve the name of a grape, altho' its wood and its leaf greatly resemble the vine. This shrub bears no bunches, and you hardly ever see upon it above two grapes together. The grape in substance and colour is very like a violet damask plum, and its stone, which is always single, greatly resembles a nut. Tho' not very relishing, it has not however that disagreeable sharpness of the grape that grows in the neighbourhood of New Orleans.

On the edge of the savannahs or mea-

cannot proceed an hundred
 out meeting with one ;
 the shoots should happen
 exposed place, it cannot
 their fruit should ever
 maturity. The trees to
 are so high, and so
 and the intervals of un-
 filled with reeds, that
 warm the earth or ripen
 shrub. I will not under-
 all the kinds of grapes
 produces : it is even
 grow them all ; I shall on-
 or four.
 that I shall mention does
 give the name of a grape,
 and its leaf greatly resem-
 a shrub bears no bunch-
 rarely ever see upon it
 together. The grape
 colour is very like a vi-
 um, and its stone, which
 greatly resembles a nut-
 dish, it has not how-
 considerable sharpness of the
 seeds in the neighbourhood
 of the savannahs or mea-

dows we meet with a grape, the shoots
 of which resemble those of the Burgun-
 dy grape. They make from this a tole-
 rable good wine, if they take care to ex-
 pose it to the sun in summer, and to the
 cold in winter. I have made this experi-
 ment myself, and must say that I never
 could turn it into vinegar.

There is another kind of grape which
 I make no difficulty in classing with the
 grapes of Corinth, commonly called cur-
 rants. It resembles them in the wood,
 the leaf, the tree, the size, and the sweet-
 ness. Its tartness is owing to its being
 prevented from ripening by the thick
 shade of the large trees to which it
 twines. If it were planted and cultivat-
 ed in an open field, I make not the least
 doubt but it would equal the grape of
 Corinth, with which I class it.

Muscadine grapes, of an amber colour,
 of a very good kind, and very sweet,
 have been found upon declivities of a
 good exposure, even so far north as the
 latitude of 31 degrees. There is the
 greatest probability that they might make
 excellent wine of these, as it cannot be
 doubted but the grapes might be bro't
 to great perfection in this country, since

in the moist soil of New Orleans, the cuttings of the grape which some of the inhabitants of that city brought from France, have succeeded extremely well and afforded good wine.

As a proof of the fertility of Louisiana, I cannot forbear mentioning the following fact; an inhabitant of New Orleans having planted in his garden a few twigs of this Muscadine vine, with the view of making an arbour of them, one of his sons with another (negro) boy entered the garden in the month of June, when the grapes are ripe, and broke off all the bunches they could find. The father, after severely chiding the two boys, pruned the twigs that had been broken and bruised; and as several months of summer still remained, the vine pushed out new shoots, and new bunches, which ripened and were as good as the former.

The Persimmon, which the French of the colony call Placminier, very much resembles our medlar tree in its leaf and wood: Its flower, which is about an inch and a half broad, is white, and is composed of five petals; its fruit is about the size of a large hen's egg; it is

of New Orleans, the
 pe which some of the
 at city brought from
 ceeded extremely well
 wine.

the fertility of Louisiana,
 mentioning the follow-
 ing of New Orleans
 his garden a few twigs
 vine, with the view of
 of them, one of his
 (negro) boy entered
 month of June, when
 he, and broke off all
 could find. The fa-
 chiding the two boys,
 that had been broken
 as several months of
 gained, the vine push-
 s, and new bunches,
 l were as good as the

, which the French
 Placminier, very much
 lar tree in its leaf and
 which is about an
 pad, is white, and is
 etals; its fruit is about
 rge hen's egg; it is

shaped like our medlar, but its substance
 is sweeter, and more delicate. This fruit
 is astringent; when it is quite ripe the
 natives make bread of it, which they
 keep from year to year; and the bread
 has this remarkable property that it will
 stop the most violent looseness or dysen-
 tery; therefore it ought to be used with
 caution, and only after physic. The na-
 tives, in order to make this bread,
 squeeze the fruit over fine sieves to sepa-
 rate the pulp from the skin and the
 kernels. Of this pulp, which is like paste
 or thick pap, they make cakes about a
 foot and a half long, a foot broad, and
 a finger's breadth in thickness. These
 they dry in an oven; upon gridirons,
 or else in the sun; which last method of
 drying gives a greater relish to the bread.
 This is one of their articles of traffic
 with the French.

Their plum-trees are of two sorts:
 The best is that which bears violet co-
 loured plums, quite like ours, which are
 not disagreeable, and which certainly
 would be good if they did not grow in
 the middle of the woods. The other
 kind bears plums of the colour of an un-
 ripe cherry, and these are so tart that no

body can eat them; but I am of opinion they might be preserved like gooseberries, especially if pains were taken to cultivate them in open grounds. The small cherries, called the Indian cherry, are frequent in this country. Their wood is very beautiful, and their leaves differ in nothing from those of the cherry tree.

The Papaws are only to be found far up in Higher Louisiana. These trees, it would seem, do not love heat; they do not grow so tall as the plum trees; their wood is very hard and flexible; for the lower branches are sometimes so loaded with fruit that they hang perpendicularly downwards; and if you unload them of their fruit in the evening, you will find them next morning in their natural erect position. The fruit resembles a middle sized cucumber; the pulp is very agreeable and very wholesome; but the rind which is easily stripped off, leaves on the fingers so sharp an acid, that if you touch your eye with them before you wash them, it will be immediately inflamed, and itch most insupportably for twenty four hours after.

The natives had doubtless got the peach trees and fig trees from the English

but I am of opinion
 served like gooseberries,
 were taken to cultivate
 lands. The small cher-
 andian cherry, are fre-
 country. Their wood is
 and their leaves differ in
 of the cherry tree.
 e only to be found far
 uisiana. These trees, it
 not love heat; they do
 is the plum trees; their
 and flexible; for the
 re sometimes so loaded
 ey hang perpendicular-
 and if you unload them
 the evening, you will
 morning in their natural
 The fruit resembles a
 umber; the pulp is very
 wholesome; but the rind
 stripped off, leaves
 sharp an acid, that if you
 th them before you wash
 immediately inflamed,
 nsupportably for twenty

had doubtless got the
 ig trees from the English

colony of Carolina; before the French es-
 tablished themselves in Louisiana. The
 peaches are of the kind which we call al-
 berges; are of the size of the fist, adhere
 to the stone, and contain so much water
 that they make a kind of wine of it. The
 figs are either blue or white; are large
 and well enough tasted. Our colonists
 plant the peach stones about the end of
 February, and suffer the trees to grow
 exposed to all the weathers. In the third
 year they will gather from one tree at
 least two hundred peaches, and double
 that number for six or seven years more,
 when the tree dies irrecoverably. As
 new trees are so easily produced, the loss
 of the old ones is not in the least regret-
 ted.

The orange trees and citron trees that
 were brought from Cape Francois have
 succeeded extremely well; however I
 have seen so severe a winter that those
 kinds of trees were entirely frozen to
 the very trunk. In that case they cut
 the trees down to the ground, and the
 following summer they produced shoots
 that were better than the former. If these
 trees have succeeded in the flat and moist
 soil of New Orleans, what may we not

expect when they are planted in better soil, and upon declivities of a good exposure. The oranges and citrons are as good as those of other countries; but the rind of the orange in particular is very thick, which makes it the better for a sweat-meat.

There is plenty of wild apples in Louisiana, like those in Europe; and the inhabitants have got many kinds of fruit-trees from France, such as are apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. which in the low grounds run more into wood than fruit.

The blue whortle berry is a shrub somewhat taller than our largest gooseberry bushes, which are left to grow as they please. Its berries are of a blue colour: they taste like a sweetish gooseberry, and when infused in brandy it makes a good dram.

Louisiana produces no black mulberries: but from the sea to the Arkansas, which is an extent of navigation upon the river of 200 leagues, we meet very frequently with three kinds of mulberries; one a bright red, another perfectly white, and a third white and sweetish. The first of these kinds is very common,

ey are planted in betw
declivities of a good
oranges and citrons are
of other countries; but
ange in particular is ve-
makes it the better for a

of wild apples in Lou-
n, Europe; and the in-
not many kinds of fruit-
ce, such as are apples,
cherries, &c. which in
run more into wood

tle berry is a shrub some-
our largest gooseberry
e left to grow as they
es are of a blue colour:
sweetish gooseberry, and
brandy it makes a good

duces no black mulber-
the sea to the Arkantas,
ent of navigation upon
leagues, we meet very
three kinds of mulber-
nt red, another perfect-
third white and sweetish.
kinds is very common,

but the two last are more rare. Of the red mulberries they make excellent vinegar, which keeps a long time, provided they take care in the making of it to keep it in the shade in a vessel well stop- ped, contrary to the practice in France. They make vinegar also of bramble berries, but this is not so good as the former. I do not doubt but the colonists at present apply themselves seriously to the cultivation of mulberries, to feed silk- worms, especially as the countries adjoining to France, and which supplied us with silk, have now made the exportation of it difficult.

The olive-trees in this colony are sur- prisingly beautiful. The trunk is some- times a foot and an half diameter, and thirty feet high before it spreads out in- to branches. The Provençals settled in the colony affirm, that its olives would afford as good an oil as those of their country. Some of the olives that were prepared to be eat green were as good as those of Provence.

They have great numbers and a va- riety of kinds of walnut-trees in this country. There is a very large kind, the wood of which is almost as black as

ebony, but very porous. The fruit, with the outer inch, is of the size of a large hen's egg: the shell has no cleft, is very rough, and so hard as to require a hammer to break it. Tho' the fruit be very relishing, yet it is covered with such a thick film, that few can bestow the pains of separating the one from the other. The natives make bread of it, by throwing the fruit into water, and rubbing it till the film and oil be separated from it. If those trees were engrafted with the French walnut, their fruit would probably be improved.

Other walnut-trees have a very white and flexible wood. Of this wood the natives make their crooked spades for houghing their fields. The nut is smaller than ours, and the shell more tender, but the fruit is so bitter that none but paroquets can put up with it.

The Hiccori bears a very small kind of nut, which at first sight one would take for filberts, as they have the same shape and colour, and their shell is as tender; but within they are formed like walnuts. They have such an excellent relish, that the French make fried cakes of them as good as those of almonds.

porous. The fruit, is of the size of a the shell has no cleft, it is hard as to require it. Tho' the fruit be it is covered with such it few can bestow the ng the one from the ves make bread of it, by it into water, and rub- in and oil be separated. e trees were engrafted walnut, their fruit would oved.

trees have a very white d. Of this wood the ir crooked spades for elds. The nut is small the shell more tender, bitter than none but par up with it. ears a very small kind of it fight one would take ey have the same shape their shell is as tender, are formed like walnuts. an excellent relish, that e fried cakes of them as f almonds.

Louisiana produces but a few filberts, as the filbert requires a poor gravelly soil, which is not to be met with in this province, except in the neighbourhood of the sea, especially near the river Mobile.

The large chefnuts are to be met with but at the distance of 100 leagues from the sea, and far from the rivers in the heart of the woods, between the country of the Chactaws and that of the Chickasaws. The common chefnuts succeed best upon high declivities, and their fruit is like the chefnuts, which are called the acorn chefnuts, as they are shaped like an acorn, and grow in such a cup. But they have the colour and taste of a chefnut; and I have often thought, that those were the acorns which the first of men were said to have lived upon.

The Sweet-Gum, or Liquid-Amber (Copalm) is not only extremely common, but it affords a balm, the virtues of which are infinite. Its bark is black and hard, and its wood so tender and supple, that when the tree is felled you may draw from the middle of it rods of five or six feet in length. It cannot be employed in building or furniture, as it warps continually; nor is fit for burning on ac-

T

count of its strong smell; but a little of it in a fire yields an agreeable perfume. Its leaf is indented with five points as a star.

I shall not undertake to particularize all the virtues of this Sweet-Gum or Liquid-Amber, not having learned all of them from the natives of the country, who would be no less surprised to find that we used it only as a varnish, than they were to see our surgeons bleed their patients. This balm, according to them, is an excellent febrifuge; they take ten or a dozen drops of it in gruel fasting, and before their meals; and if they should take a little more, they have no reason to apprehend any danger. The physicians among the natives purge their patients before they give it them. It cures wounds in two days without any bad consequences: it is equally sovereign for all kinds of ulcers after having applied to them for some days a plaster of bruised ground-ivy. It cures consumptions, opens obstructions; it affords relief in the cholic and all internal diseases; it comforts the heart; in short, it contains so many virtues, that they are every day discovering some new property that it has.

ing freely, but a little of it in agreeable perfume. Its bark with five points as a star. I undertake to particularize this Sweet-Gum or Li- not having learned all of natives of the country, no less surprised to find only as a varnish, than our surgeons bleed their balm, according to them, not febrifuge; they take drops of it in gruel fast- their meals; and if they little more, they have no comprehend any danger. The natives purge their they give it them. It in two days without any ces: it is equally sovereign ulcers after having appli- or some days a plaster of -ivy. It cures consump- structions; it affords re- lic and all internal disea- ts the heart; in short, it any virtues, that they are overing some new proper-

White and red cedars are very com- mon upon the coast. The incorruptibili- ty of the wood, and many other excellent properties, which are well known, indu- ced the first French settlers to build their houses of it; which were but very low.

Next to the cedar, the cypress tree is the most valuable wood. Some reckon it incorruptible; and if it be not, it is at least a great many years in rotting. The tree that was found twenty feet deep in the earth near New Orleans was a cy- press and was uncorrupted. Now if the lands of Lower Louisiana are augmented two leagues every century, this tree must have been buried at least twelve centu- ries. The cypress grows very straight and tall, with a proportionable thickness. They commonly make their Pettyaugers of a single trunk of this tree, which will carry three or four thousand weight, and sometimes more. Of one of these trees a carpenter ordered to make two pettyau- gers, one of which carried sixteen tons, and the other fourteen. There is a cy- press at Baton Rouge, a French settle- ment twenty-six leagues above New-Or- leans, which measures twelve yards round, and is of a prodigious height.

The cypress has a few branches, and its leaf is long and narrow. The trunk close by the ground sometimes sends off two or three stems, which enter the earth obliquely, and serve for buttresses to the tree. Its wood is of a beautiful colour, somewhat reddish; it is soft, light, and smooth; its grain is straight, and pores very close. It is easily split by wedges, and tho' used green it never warps. It renews itself in a very extraordinary manner: a short time after it is cut down, a shoot is observed to grow from one of its roots exactly in the form of a sugar-loaf, and this sometimes rises ten feet high before any leaf appears.

The Cypresses were formerly very common in Louisiana; but they have wasted them so imprudently, that they are now somewhat rare. They felled them for the sake of their bark, with which they covered their houses, and they sawed the wood into planks which they exported to different places. The price of the wood now is three times as much as it was formerly.

The pine-tree which loves a barren soil, is to be found in great abundance on the sea-coasts, where it grows very

is a few branches, and
and narrow. The trunk
round sometimes sends off
ems, which enter the earth
serve for buttresses to the
d is of a beautiful colour,
ish; it is soft, light, and
ain is straight, and pores
it is easily split by wedges,
green it never warps. It
in a very extraordinary
hort time after it is cut
is observed to grow from
s exactly in the form of a
d this sometimes rises ten
re any leaf appears.

esses were formerly very
Louisiana; but they have
so imprudently, that they
ewhat rare. They felted
ake of their bark, with
covered their houses, and
e wood into planks which
to different places. The
ood now is three times as
as formerly.

tree which loves a barren
found in great abundance
baths, where it grows very

high and very beautiful. The islands
upon the coast, which are formed whol-
ly of shining sand, bear no other trees,
and I am persuaded that as fine matts
might be made of them as of the firs of
Sweden.

All the south parts of Louisiana abound
with the Wild Laurel, which grows in
the woods without any cultivation: the
same may be said of the stone laurel;
but if a person is not upon his guard he
may take for the laurel a tree natural to
the country, which would communicate
its bad smell to every thing it is applied
to. Among the laurels the preference
ought to be given to the tulip-laurel
(magnolia) which is not known in Eu-
rope. This tree is of the height and
bulk of one of our common walnut
trees. Its head is naturally very round,
and so thick of leaves that neither the
sun nor rain can penetrate it. Its leaves
are full four inches long, near three inch-
es broad, and very thick, of a beautiful
sea-green on the upper-side, and resem-
bling white velvet on the under-side:
its bark is smooth and of a grey colour;
its wood is white, soft, and flexible, and
the grain interwoven. It owes its name

to the form of its great white flowers, which are at least two inches broad. These appearing in the spring amidst the glossy verdure of the leaves, have a most beautiful effect. As the top is naturally round and the leaves are ever-green, avenues of this tree would doubtless be worthy of a royal garden. After it has shed its leaves, its fruit appears in the form of a pine apple, and upon the first approach of the cold its grain turns into a lively red. Its kernel is very bitter and 'tis said to be a specific against fevers.

The Sassafras, the name of which is familiar to botanists on account of its medicinal qualities, is a large and tall tree. Its bark is thick and cracked here and there; its wood is somewhat of the colour of cinnamon, and has an agreeable smell. It will not burn in the fire without the mixture of other wood, and even in the fire, if it should be separated from the flaming wood, it is immediately extinguished, as if it were dipped in water.

The Maple grows upon declivities in cold climates, and is much more plentiful in the northern than southern parts

its great white flowers,
 half two inches broad.
 in the spring amidst the
 the leaves, have a most

As the top is natu-
 the leaves are ever-green,
 tree would doubtless be
 al garden. After it has
 its fruit appears in the
 apple, and upon the first
 e cold its grain turns in-
 Its kernel is very bit-
 d to be a specific against

s, the name of which is
 manifests on account of its
 lities, is a large and tall
 is thick and cracked here
 wood is somewhat of the
 umon, and has an agreeable
 not burn in the fire without
 f other wood, and even in
 should be separated from
 wood, it is immediately ex-
 if it were dipped in wa-

e grows upon declivities in
 , and is much more plenti-
 rthern than southern parts

of the colony. By boring it they draw
 from it a sweet syrup which I have
 drunk of, and which they alledge is an
 excellent stomachic.

The Myrtle Wax-tree is one of the
 greatest blessings with which nature has
 enriched Louisiana, as in this country
 the bees lodge their honey in the earth
 to save it from the ravages of the bears,
 who are very fond of it, and don't value
 their stings. One would be apt to take
 it, at first sight, both from its bark and
 its height, for that kind of laurel used in
 the kitchens. It rises in several stems
 from the root; its leaf is like that of
 the laurel, but not so thick nor of such
 a lively green. It bears its fruit in bun-
 ches like a nosegay, rising from the
 same place in various stalks about two
 inches long: at the end of each of those
 stalks is a little pea, containing a kernel
 in a nut, which last is wholly covered
 with wax. The fruit, which is very
 plentiful, is easily gathered, as the shrub
 is very flexible. The tree thrives as
 well in the shade of other trees as in the
 open air, in watry places and cold coun-
 tries, as well as in dry grounds and hot
 climates; for I have been told that some

of them have been found in Canada, a country as cold as Denmark.

This tree yields two kinds of wax, one a whitish yellow, and the other green. It was a long time before they learned to separate them, and they prepared the wax at first in the following manner. They threw the grains and the stalks into a large kettle of boiling water, and when the wax was detached from them, they skimmed off the grains. When the water cooled, the wax floated in a cake at the top, and being cut small, bleached in a shorter time than bees wax. They now prepare it in this manner; they throw boiling water upon the stalks and grains till they entirely float, and when they have stood thus a few minutes, they pour off the water, which carries the finest wax with it. This wax, when cold, is of a pale yellow colour, and may be bleached in six or seven days. Having separated the best wax, they pour the water again upon the stalks and grains, and boil all together till they think they have separated all the wax. Both kinds are exported to our sugar islands, where the first is sold for 100 sols the pound, and the second for 40:

en found in Canada, and
 Denmark.
 There are two kinds of wax, one
 green, and the other green.
 Some time before they learned
 to use it, and they prepared the
 following manner.
 The grains and the stalks in-
 steamed in boiling water, and
 was detached from them,
 off the grains. When
 the wax floated in a
 pan, and being cut small,
 shorter time than bees wax.
 To prepare it in this manner;
 boiling water upon the stalks
 they entirely float, and
 have stood thus a few mi-
 nutes off the water, which
 is the best wax with it. This wax,
 of a pale yellow colour, and
 mended in six or seven days.
 To make the best wax, they
 again upon the stalks and
 boil all together till they
 have separated all the wax.
 The first is sold for 100
 shillings, and the second for 40.

This wax is so brittle and dry that if
 it fall it breaks into several pieces; on
 this account however it lasts longer than
 that of France, and is preferred to it in
 our sugar islands, where the latter is sof-
 tened by the great heats, and consumes
 like tallow. I would advise those who
 prepare this wax to separate the grain
 from the short stalk before they boil it,
 as the stalk is greener than the grain, and
 seems to part easily with its colour. The
 water which serves to melt and separate
 the wax is far from being useless. The
 fruit communicates to it such an astring-
 ent virtue, as to harden the tallow that
 is melted in it to as hard a degree, as the
 candles of France. This astringent qua-
 lity likewise renders it an admirable spe-
 cific against a dysentery or looseness.
 From what I have said of the myrtle wax
 tree, it may well be believed that the
 French of Louisiana cultivate it carefully,
 and make plantations of it.

The Cotton-tree (a poplar) is a large
 tree which no wife deserves the name it
 bears, unless for some beards that it
 throws out. Its fruit which contains the
 grain is about the size of a walnut, and of
 no use; its wood is yellow, smooth, some-

what hard, of a fine grain, and very proper for cabinet work. The bark of its root is a sovereign remedy for cuts, and so red that it may even serve to dye that colour.

The Acacia (Locust) is the same in Louisiana as in France, much more common, and less straight. The natives call it by a name that signifies hard wood, and they make their bows of it because it is very stiff. They look upon it as an incorruptible wood, which induced the French settlers to build their houses of it. The posts fixed in the earth must be entirely stripped of their bark, for notwithstanding their hardness, if the least bark be left upon them they will take root.

The Holm-oak grows to a surprising bulk and height in this country; I have seen them a foot and a half diameter, about 30 feet from the ground to the lowest branches.

The Mangrove is very common all over America. It grows in Louisiana, near the sea, even to the bounds of low-water mark. It is more prejudicial than useful; inasmuch as it occupies a great deal of good land, prevents sailors from

(214)

no grain, and very pro-
work. The bark of its
is very good for curing, and
even serve to dye that

beauty is the same in
rance, much more con-
sistent. The natives call
it signifies hard wood,
their bows of it because it
they look upon it as an
good, which induced the
to build their houses of
fixed in the earth must be
of their bark, for not-
their hardness, if the least
on them they will take

oak grows to a surprising
in this country; I have
foot and a half diameter,
from the ground to the

above is very common all

It grows in Louisiana,
near to the bounds of low-
It is more prejudicial than
which it occupies a great
land, prevents sailors from

landing, and affords a shelter to the fish
from the fishermen.

Oak trees are common in Louisiana; there
are some red, some white, and some
ever-green. A ship builded of Sta. Ma-
loes; the oak is called the red is as good
as the ever-green, on which we set so
high a value in France. The ever-green
oak is most common towards the sea-
coasts, and near the banks of rivers, con-
sequently may be transported with great
ease, and become a great resource for the
navy of France. I forgot to mention a
fourth kind of oak, namely the black
oak, so called from the colour of its bark.
Its wood is very hard, and of a deep
red. It grows upon the declivities of
hills and in the savannahs. Happening
after a shower of rain to examine one of
these which I cut down, I observed some
water to come from it as red as blood,
which made me think that it might be
used for dying.

The Ash is very common in this coun-
try; but more and better upon the sea-
coasts than in the inland parts. As it is
easy to be had, and is harder than the
elm, the wheel-wrights make use of it
for wheels, which it is needless to ring

with iron in a country where there are neither stones nor gravel.

The Elm, Beech, Lime, Hornbeam, are exactly the same in Louisiana as in France; the last of these trees is very common here. The bark of the Lime tree of this country is equally proper for the making of ropes, as the bark of the common Lime; but its leaf is twice as large, and shaped like an oblong Trefoil leaf with the point cut off.

The white woods are the Aspen, Willow, Alder and Liart. This last grows very large, its wood is white and light, and its fibres are interwoven; it is very flexible and is easily cut, on which account they make their large Pettyaugers of it.

The Ayac or Stinking wood, is usually a small tree, seldom exceed the thickness of a man's leg; its leaf is of a yellowish green, glossy, and of an oval form, being about three inches in length. The wood is yellow, and yields a water of the same colour, when it is cut in the sap: but both the wood and the water that comes from it have a disagreeable smell. The natives use the wood for dying; they cut it into small bits, pound and

country where there are gravel.

h, Lime, Hornbeam, pine in Louisiana as in of these trees is very The bark of the Lime try is equally proper for pes, as the bark of the but its leaf is twice as l like an oblong Trefoil nt cut off.

oods are the Aspen, Wil- Liart. This last grows wood is white and light, interwoven; it is very easily cut, on which ac- e their large Pettyaugers

Stinking wood, is usual- seldom exceed the thick- leg; its leaf is of a yel- gloily, and of an oval form, tree inches in length. The , and yields a water of the when it is cut in the sap: wood and the water that have a disagreeable smell. use the wood for dying; to small bits, pound and

steep them in water. Having strained this water, they dip the feathers and hair in- to it, which it is their custom to dye first yellow and then red. When they in- tend to use it for the yellow dye, they take care to cut the wood in the winter, but if they want only a slight colour they never mind the season of cutting it.

The Michonchi, or Vinegar tree, is a shrub with leaves, somewhat resembling those of the alh; but the foot-stalk from which the leaves hang is much longer. When the leaves are dry the natives mix them with their tobacco to weaken it a little, for they don't love strong tobacco for smoaking. The wood is of an af- tringent nature, and if put into vinegar makes it stronger.

The Caifino, or Yapon, is a shrub which never grows higher than 15 feet; its bark is very smooth, and the wood flex- ible. Its leaf is very much indented, and when used as a tea is reckoned good for the stomach. The natives make an intoxica- ting liquor from it, by boiling it in water till a great part of the liquor evaporates.

The Toothach-tree does not grow high- er than 10 or 12 feet. The trunk, which is not very large, is wholly covered over

with short thick prickles, which are easily rubbed off. The pith of this shrub is almost as large as that of the elder, and the form of the leaf is almost the same in both. It has two barks, the outer almost black, and the inner white, with somewhat of a pale reddish hue. This inner bark has the property of curing the toothach. The patient rolls it up to the size of a bean, puts it upon the aching tooth, and chews it till the pain ceases. Sailors and other such people powder it, and use it as pepper.

The Passion-thorn does not rise above the height of a shrub; but its trunk is rather thick for its height. This shrub is in great esteem among the Natches; but I never could learn for what reason. Its leaf resembles that of the black thorn; and its wood while it is green is not very hard. Its prickles are at least two inches long, and are very hard and piercing; within half an inch of their root two other small prickles grow out from them as to form a cross. The whole trunk is covered with these prickles, so that you must be very wary how you approach it, or cut it.

The Elder Tree is exactly like that of France, only that its leaf is a little more indented. The juice of its leaves mixed

prickles, which are easily with of this shrub is almost of the elder, and the form of the same in both. Its outer almost black, and with somewhat of a pale inner bark has the property to cure the toothach. The patient puts it the size of a bean, puts it in his tooth, and chews it till it is soft. Sailors and other such use it as pepper. The black thorn does not rise above the height of a shrub; but its trunk is rather tall. This shrub is in the Natches; but I need not say for what reason. Its leaf is like that of the black thorn, and its bark is not very hard. It is at least two inches long, and is very hard and piercing; within their root two other small roots grow out from them, as to form a whole trunk is covered with a bark so that you must be very careful to approach it, or cut it. The tree is exactly like that of the elder; its leaf is a little more green, and the juice of its leaves mixed

with hog's lard is a specific against the hemorrhoids.

The Palmetto has its leaves in the form of an open fan, scalloped at the end of each of its folds. Its bark is more rough and knotty than that of the palm tree. Altho' it is less than that of the East Indies, it may however serve for the same purposes. Its wood is not harder than that of a cabbage, and its trunk is so soft that the least wind overturns it, so that I never saw any but what were lying along on the ground. It is very common in Lower Louisiana; where there are not wild oxen; for these animals who love it dearly, and are greatly fattened by it, devour it wherever they can find it. The Spanish women make hats of its leaves that do not weigh an ounce; riding hoods, and other curious works.

The Birch tree is the same with that of France. In the north they make canoes of its bark large enough to hold eight persons. When the sap rises they strip off the bark from the tree in one piece with wedges, after which they sew up the two ends of it to serve for stem and stern, and anoint the whole with gum.

I make not the least doubt but that there are great numbers of other trees in the forests of Louisiana that deserve to be particularly described ; but I know of none, nor have I heard of any, but what I have already spoken of. For our travellers, from whom alone we can get any intelligence of those things, are more intent upon discovering game which they stand in need of for their subsistence, than in observing the productions of nature in the vegetable kingdom. To what I have said of trees, I shall only add, from my own knowledge, an account of two singular excrescences.

The first is a kind of Agaric or Mushroom, which grows from the root of the walnut-trees, especially when it is felled. The natives, who are very careful in the choice of their food, gather it with great attention, boil it in water, and eat it with their gruel. I had the curiosity to taste of it, and found it very delicate, but rather insipid, which might easily be corrected with a little seasoning.

The other excrescence is commonly found upon trees near the banks of rivers and lakes. It is called Spanish beard, which name was given it by the natives, who,

all doubt but that there
of other trees in the
a that deserve to be par-
; but I know of none,
of any, but what I have
For our travellers, from
can get any intelligence
re more intent upon dis-
which they stand in need
tence, than in observing
of nature in the vegeta-
to what I have said of
add, from my own know-
of two singular excref-

kind of Agaric or Mush-
rows from the root of the
pecially when it is felled.
ho are very careful in the
food, gather it with great
t in water, and eat it with
had the curiosity to taste of
it very delicate, but rather
might easily be corrected
reasoning.

crecence is commonly found
ar the banks of rivers and
called Spanish beard, which
given it by the natives, who,

when the Spaniards first appeared in their
country about 240 years ago, were great-
ly surpris'd at their mustachios and
beards. This excrescence appears like
a bunch of hair hanging from the large
branches of trees, and might at first be
easily mistaken for an old peruque,
especially when it is dancing with the
wind. As the first settlers of Louisiana
used only mud walls for their houses, they
commonly mixed it with the mud for
strengthening the buildin. When ga-
thered it is of a grey colour, but when
it is dry its bark falls off, and discovers
blank filaments as long and as strong as
the hair of a horse's tail. I dress'd some
of it for stuffing a mattra'ss, by first lay-
ing it up in a heap to make it part with
the bark, and afterwards beating it to
take off some small branches that resem-
ble so many little hooks. It is affirm'd
by some to be incorruptible: I myself
have seen one of it, under old rotten trees;
that was perfectly fresh and strong.

The great fertility of Louisiana ren-
ders the creeping plants extremely com-
mon. I shall only mention the most re-
markable.

The Bearded-creeper is so called from having its whole stalk covered with a beard about an inch long, hooked at the end, and somewhat thicker than horse's hair. There is no tree which it loves to cling to so much as to the Sweet Gum; and so great is its sympathy, if I may be allowed the expression, for that tree, it turns solely towards the Sweet Gum, altho' it should be at the greatest distance from it. This is likewise the tree upon which it thrives best. It has the same virtue with its balm of being a febrifuge, and this I affirm after a great number of proofs. The physicians among the natives use this simple in the following manner. They take a piece of it, above the length of the finger, which they split into as many threads as possible; these they boil in a quart of water, till one third of the decoction evaporate, and the remainder is strained clear. They then purge the patient, and the next day, upon the approach of the fit, they give a third of the decoction to drink. If the patient be not cured with the first dose, he is again purged and drinks another third, which seldom fails of having the wished-for effect. This medicine is indeed very

creeper is so called from its stalk covered with a inch long, hooked at the end thicker than horse's tail. No tree which it loves to grow as to the Sweet Gum; its sympathy, if I may express it, for that tree, towards the Sweet Gum, is at the greatest distance is likewise the tree upon which it best. It has the same value as being a febrifuge, after a great number of physicians among the natives in the following manner: a piece of it, above the finger, which they split into as many as possible; these they steep in water, till one third of the water has evaporated, and the remainder is clear. They then purge the next day, upon the second fit, they give a third of it to drink. If the patient be the first dose, he is again given another third, which of having the wished-for medicine is indeed very

bitter, but it strengthens the stomach; a singular advantage it has over the Jesuits' bark, which is accused of having a contrary effect. There is another Creeper which is like Sarsaparilla, only that it bears its leaves by threes. It bears a fruit smooth on one side like a filbert, and on the other as rough as the little shells which serve for money on the Guinea coast. I shall not speak of its properties; they are but too well known by the women of Louisiana, especially the girls, who very often have recourse to it.

Another Creeper is called by the native physician the remedy against poisoned arrows. It is large and very beautiful; its leaves are pretty long, and the pods it bears are narrow, about an inch broad, and eight inches long.

The Sarsaparilla grows naturally in Louisiana, and it is not inferior in its qualities to that of Mexico. It is so well known that 'tis needless to enlarge on it.

The Esquine or Bamboo partly resembles a creeper and partly a bramble. It is furnished with hard spikes like prickles, and its oblong leaves are like those of the common Creeper (Liane); its stalk is straight, long, shining, and hard, and

it runs along the reeds : its root is spongy, and sometimes as large as one's head, but more long than round. Besides the sudorific virtue which the Esquine possesses in common with the Sarsaparella, it has the property of making the hair grow, and the women among the natives use it successfully with this view. They cut the root into small bits, boil them in water, and wash their heads with the decoction. I have seen several of them whose hair came down below their knees, and one particular whose hair came lower than the ankle bone. Hops grow naturally in the high lands. Maiden-hair grows in Louisiana more beautiful, at least as good as that of Canada, which is in so great repute. It grows in gullies upon the sides of hills, in places that are absolutely impenetrable to the most ardent rays of the sun. It seldom rises above a foot, and it bears a thick shaggy head.

The Canes or Reeds which I have mentioned so often may be divided into two kinds. One kind grows in moist places to the height of eighteen feet, and the thickness of the wrist. The natives make matts, sieves, small boxes, and other works of it. Those that grow in

ds : its root is spongy, as large as one's head, but hard. Besides the sudorific Esquine possesses in Sarsaparilla, it has the hair grow, and the natives use it successfully.

They cut the root into thin slices, and wash them in water, and wash the decoction. I have seen men whose hair came down to their knees, and one particularly came lower than the others. The roots grow naturally in the soil. Maiden-hair grows in the soil, at least as good as the others, which is in so great abundance in gullies upon the banks of the rivers, and in places that are absolutely the most ardent rays of the sun rise above a foot, and the black shaggy head.

Reeds which I have seen may be divided into two kinds. One kind grows in moist places, and is about eighteen feet high, and the other is the wright. The natives use the leaves, small boxes, and the roots. Those that grow in

dry places are never so thick, but are so hard, that before the arrival of the French, the natives used splits of those reeds to cut their victuals with. After a certain number of years, the large reeds bear a great abundance of grains, which is somewhat like oats, but about three times as large. The natives carefully gather these grains and make bread or gruel of them. This flour swells as much as that of wheat. When the reeds have yielded the grain, they die, and none appear for a long time after in the same place, especially if fire has been set to the old ones.

The Flat-Root receives its name from the form of its root, which is thin, flat, pretty often indented and sometimes even pierced thro': it is a line or sometimes two lines in thickness, and its breadth is commonly a foot and a half. From this large root hang several other small straight roots, which draw the nourishment from the earth. This plant, which grows in meadows that are not very rich, sends up from the same root several straight stalks about eighteen inches high, which are as hard as wood, and on the top of the stalk it bears small purplish flowers,

in their figure greatly resembling those of heath ; its seed is contained in a deep cup closed at the head, and in a manner crowned. Its leaves are about an inch broad, and about two long, without any indenting, of a dark green, inclining to a brown. It is so strong a sudorific, that the natives never use any other for promoting sweating, altho' they are perfectly acquainted with *sassafras*, *sarsaparella*, the *esquine* and others.

The Rattle-snake herb, has a bulbous root, like that of the *tuberoze*, but twice as large. The leaves of both have the same shape and the same colour, and on the under side have some flame-coloured spots ; but those of the rattlesnake plant are twice as large as the others, end in a very firm point, and are armed with very hard prickles on both sides. Its stalk grows to the height of about three feet, and from the head rise five or six sprigs in different directions, each of which bears a purple flower an inch broad, with five leaves in the form of a cup. After these leaves are shed there remains a head about the size of a small nut but shaped like the head of a poppy.

This head is separated into four divi-

ly resembling those of
contained in a deep
head, and in a manner
es are about an inch
two long, without
dark green, inclining
so strong a sudorific,
ever use any other for
g, altho' they are per-
with sassafras, sarsapa-
and others.
te herb, has a bulbous
the tuberose, but twice
aves of both have the
the same colour, and
have some flame-colour-
nose of the rattlesnake
as large as the others,
point, and are armed
bristles on both sides.
o the height of about
om the head rise five
ifferent directions, each
purple flower an inch
leaves in the form of
ese leaves are shed there
out the size of a small
ke the head of a poppy.
eparated into four divi-

ans, each contains four black seeds,
equally thick throughout, and about the
size of large lentil. When the head is
ripe, it will, when shaken, give the same
found as the tail of a rattle-snake, which
seems to indicate the property of the
plant; for it is the specific remedy
against the bite of that dangerous reptile.

The person who has been bit ought
in mediately to take a root, bite off part
of it, chew it for some time, and apply
it to the wound. In five or six hours it
will extract the whole poison, and no
bad consequences need be apprehended.

Ground-ivy is said by the natives to
possess many more virtues than are
known to our botanists. It is said to ease
women in labour when drank in decoction;
to cure ulcers, if bruised and laid
upon the ulcered part; to be a sovereign
remedy for the head ach; a considerable
quantity of its leaves bruised, and laid as
a cataplasm upon the head, quickly re-
moves the pain. As this is an inconveni-
ent application to a person that wears his
hair, I thought of taking the salts of the
plant, and I gave some of them in vul-
nerary water to a friend of mine, who
was often attacked with the head-ach, ad-

vifing him likewife to draw up fome drops by the nofe : he feldom practifed this but he was relieved in a few moments after.

The Achechy is only to be found in the fshade of a wood, and never grows higher than fix or feven inches. It has a fmall ftalk, and its leaves are not above three lines long. Its root confifts of a great many fprigs a line in diameter, full of red juice like chickens' blood. Having tranfplanted this plant from an overfhadowed place into my garden, I expected to fee it greatly improved ; but it was not above an inch taller, and its head was only a little bufhier than ufual.

It is with the juice of this plant that the natives dye their red colour. Having firft dyed their feathers, or hair, yellow or a beautiful citron colour with the ayac wood, they boil the roots of the achechy in water, then fqueeze them with all their force, and the expreffed liquor ferves for the red dye. That which was naturally white, before it was dyed yellow, takes a beautiful fcarlet ; that which was brown, fuch as buffalos hair, which is of a chefnut colour, becomes a reddifh brown.

to draw up some drops
he seldom practised this
ed in a few moments after.
y is only to be found in
wood, and never grows
or seven inches. It has
nd its leaves are not above
g. Its root consists of a
rings a line in diameter,
juice like chickens' blood.
anted this plant from an
place into my garden, I
it greatly improved; but
e an inch taller, and its
a little bushier than usual.
e juice of this plant that
e their red colour. Ha-
ed their feathers, or hair,
beautiful citron colour with
d, they boil the roots of the
water, then squeeze them
ir force, and the expressed
for the red dye. That
naturally white, before it was
, takes a beautiful scarlet;
was brown, such as buffaloes
is of a chestnut colour, be-
dish brown.

I shall not enlarge upon the strawber-
ries, which are of an excellent flavour,
and so plentiful, that from the beginning
of April the savannahs or meadows ap-
pear quite red with them. I shall also
only just mention the tobacco, which
thrives here to very great profusion;
but I ought not to omit to take notice,
that hemp grows naturally on the lands
adjoining to the lakes on the west of the
Mississippi. The stalks are as thick as
one's finger, and about six feet long.

They are quite like ours, both in the
wood, the leaf, and the rind. The flax
which was sown in this country rose
three feet high.

Before I speak of the animals which
the first settlers found in Louisiana, it is
proper to observe, that all those which
were brought hither from France, or
from New Spain and Carolina, such as
horses, oxen, sheep, goats, dogs, cats,
and others, have multiplied and thriven
perfectly well. However it ought to be
remarked, that in Lower Louisiana,
where the ground is moist and much cove-
red with wood, they can neither be so
beautiful as in Higher Louisiana, where
the soil is dry, where there are most ex-

tentive meadows, and where the sun warms the earth to a much greater degree.

The Buffalo is about the size of one of our largest oxen, but he appears rather bigger, on account of his long curled wool, which makes him appear to the eye much larger than he really is. This wool is very fine and very thick, and is of a dark chestnut colour, as are likewise his bristly hairs, which are also curled, and so long, that the bush between his horns often falls over his eyes and hinders him from seeing before him; but his sense of hearing and smelling is so exquisite as in some measure to supply the want of the other. A pretty large bunch rises on his shoulders in the place where they join to the neck. His horns are thick, short, and black; and his hoof is also black. The cows of this species have small udders like those of a mare.

This buffalo is the chief food of the natives, and of the French also for a long time past; the best piece is the bunch of the shoulders, the taste of which is extremely delicate. They hunt this animal in the winter; for which purpose they leave Lower Louisiana, and the river Mississippi, as he cannot penetrate thither.

and where the sun
a much greater degree.
out the size of one of
ut he appears rather
t of his long curled
s him appear to the
an he really is. This
nd very thick, and is of
our, as are likewise his
are also curled, and so
sh between his horns
eyes and hinders him
him ; but his sense of
ng is so exquisite as in
supply the want of the
large bunch rises on his
place where they join to
orns are thick, short,
his hoof is also black,
his species have small
of a mare.

the chief food of the
the French also for a
the best piece is the
alders, the taste of which
cate. They hunt this
ater ; for which purpose
Louisiana, and the river
cannot penetrate thither

on account of the thickness of the woods ;
and besides loves to feed on long grass,
which is only to be found in the meadows
of the high lands. In order to get near
enough to fire upon him they go against
the wind, and they take aim at the hol-
low of the shoulder, that they may bring
him to the ground at once, for if he is
only slightly wounded, he runs against
his enemy. The natives when hunting
seldom chuse to kill any but the cows,
having experienced that the flesh of the
male smells rank ; but this they might
easily prevent, if they but cut off the
testicles from the beast as soon as he is
dead, as they do from stags and wild
boars. By killing the males there is less
hazard of diminishing the species than by
killing the females ; and besides, the
males have much more tallow, and their
skins are the largest and best.

These skins are an object of no small
consideration. The natives dress them
with their wool on to such great perfec-
tion, as to render them more pliable than
our buff. They dye them different co-
lours, and cloath themselves therewith.
To the French they supply the place of
the best blankets, being at the same time
very warm and very light.

The stag is entirely the same with that of France, only he is a little larger. They are only to be found in Upper Louisiana, where the woods are much thinner than in Lower Louisiana, and the chestnuts which the stag greatly loves are very common.

The deer is very frequent in this province, notwithstanding the great numbers of them that are killed by the natives. According to the hunters, he partly resembles the stag, the rein deer, and the roe-buck. They feed in herds, and are not in the least of a fierce nature. They are excessively capricious, hardly remain a moment in one place, but are coming and going continually. The natives dress the skin extremely well, like buff, and afterwards paint it. Those skins that are brought to France are often called does' skins.

The wolf is not above fifteen inches high, and of a proportionable length. He is not so brown as our wolves, nor so fierce and dangerous; he is therefore more like a dog than a wolf, especially the dog of the natives, who differs from him in nothing, but that he barks. The wolf is very common in the hunting

entirely the same with only he is a little larger. to be found in Upper the woods are much lower Louisiana, and the he itag greatly loves are

very frequent in this ponding the great numbers killed by the natives. e hunters, he partly re- the rein deer, and the y feed in herds, and are of a fierce nature. They apacious, hardly remain e place, but are coming ually. The natives dress ely well, like buff, and it it. Those skins that France are often called

not above fifteen inches a proportionable length. own as our wolves, nor so igerous ; he is therefore og than a wolf, especially natives, who differs from , but that he barks. The common in the hunting

countries ; and when the hunter makes a hut for himself in the evening upon the bank of a river, if he sees the wolf, he may be confident that the buffalos are not at a very great distance. It is said, that this animal, not daring to attack the buffalo when in a herd, will come and give notice to the hunter that he may kill him, in hopes of coming in for the offals. The wolves are actually so familiar, that they come and go on all sides when looking for something to eat, without minding in the least whether they be near or at a distance from the habitations of men.

The bear appears in Louisiana in winter, as the snows, which then cover the northern climate, hinder him from procuring subsistence there, and force him southwards. If some few are seen in the summer time, they are only the slow young bears, that have not been strong enough to follow the herd northwards. The bear lives upon roots and fruits, particularly acorns ; but his most delicate food is honey and milk. When he meets with either of these last, he will rather suffer himself to be killed than quit his prize. Our colonists have sometimes diverted themselves by burying a small pail

with some milk in it almost up to the edge in the ground, and setting two young bears to it. The contest then was which of the two should hinder the other from tasting the milk, and both of them so tore the earth with their paws, and pulled at the pail that they generally overturned the milk, before either of them had tasted of it.

The Tiger or Panther is not above a foot and a half high, and long in proportion; his hair is somewhat of a bright bay colour, and he is brisk as all tigers naturally are. His flesh when boiled tastes like veal, only it is not so insipid. There are very few of them to be seen.

The Cat-a-mount is a kind of wild cat, as high as the tiger, but not so thick, and his skin is extremely beautiful. He is a great destroyer of poultry, but fortunately his species is rare.

Foxes are so numerous, that upon the woody heights you frequently see nothing but their holes. As the woods afford them plenty of game, they do not molest the poultry, which are always allowed to run at large. The foxes are exactly shaped like ours, but their skin is much more beautiful. Their hair is fine and

in it smelt up to the
and setting two young
contest then was which
hinder the other from
and both of them so tore
their paws, and pulled at
generally overturned the
er of them had tasted.

another is not above a
h, and long in propor-
somewhat of a bright
e is brisk as all tigers
is flesh when boiled
only it is not so inspid.
w of them to be seen
nt is a kind of wild cat,
r, but not so thick, and
ely beautiful. He is
of poultry, but fortu-
is rare;

numerous, that upon the
u frequently see nothing.
As the woods afford
me, they do not molest
h are always allowed to
e foxes are exactly sha-
out their skin is much
Their hair is fine and

thick, of a deep brown colour, and over
this rise several long silver-coloured
hairs, which have a fine effect.

The wild cat or Raccoon has been
improperly so called by the first French
settlers in Louisiana; for it has nothing
of the cat but its nimble activity, and ra-
ther resembles a monkey. It is not above
eight or ten inches high, and about fifteen
long. Its head is like that of a fox; it
has long toes, but very short claws, not
made for seizing game; accordingly it
lives upon fruit, bread, and other such
things. This animal may be tamed, and
then becomes very frolicksome and full
of tricks. The hair of those that are
tame is grey; but of the wild is reddish;
neither of them is so beautiful as that of
the fox; it grows very fat, and its flesh
is good to eat.

The Rabbit is extremely common
over all Louisiana; it is particular in this,
that its pile is like that of the hare, and
it never burrows. Its flesh is white and
delicate, and has the usual taste, without
any rankness. There is no other kind of
Rabbit or Hare, if you please to call it, in
all the colony, than that above described.

The Wood-Rat or Opossum has the head and tail of a common rat but the bulk and length of a cat. Its legs are short, its paws long, and its toes are armed with claws ; its tail is almost without hair, and serves for hooking itself to any thing ; for when you take hold of it by that part, it immediately twists itself round your finger. Its pile is grey, and tho' very fine, yet is never smooth. The women among the natives spin and dye it red. It hunts by night, and makes war upon the poultry, only sucking their blood and leaving their flesh. It is very rare to see any creature walk so slow.

When he sees himself upon the point of being caught, instinct prompts him to counterfeit being dead ; and in this he perseveres with such constancy, that tho' laid on a hot gridiron he will not make the least sign of life. He never moves unless the person go to a distance or hide himself, in which case he endeavours as fast as possible to escape into some hole or bush.

When the she-one is about to litter, she chuses a place in the thick bushes at the foot of a tree, after which she and

at or Opossum has the
a common rat but the
of a cat. Its legs are
ing, and its toes are ar-
; its tail is almost with-
ves for hooking itself to
when you take hold of
it immediately twists
finger. Its pile is grey,
e, yet is never smooth.
among the natives spin :
It hunts by night, and
the poultry, only sucking
leaving their flesh. It
see any creature walk so

s himself upon the point
, instinct prompts him to
g dead ; and in this he
such constancy, that tho'
idiron he will not make
life. He never moves
n go to a distance or hide
ch case he endeavours as
o escape into some hole

he-one is about to litter,
ce in the thick bushes at
ee, after which she and

the male crop a great deal of fine dry
grass, which is loaded upon her belly,
and then the male drag her and her bur-
den by the tail to the littering place.
She never quits her young a moment ;
but when she is obliged to change her
lodging carries them with her in a pouch
or double skin that wraps round her belly,
and there they may sleep or suck at their
ease. The two sides of this pouch, lap
so close that the joining can hardly be
observed ; nor can they be separated with-
out tearing the skin. If the she one be
caught carrying her young thus with her
she will suffer herself to be roasted alive
without the least sign of life, rather than
open the pouch and expose her young
ones. The flesh of this animal is very
good, and tastes somewhat like that of a
sucking pig, when it is first broiled, and
afterwards roasted on the spit.

The Pole-cat or Skunk is about the
size of a kitten eight months old. The
male is of a beautiful black, but the fe-
male has rings of white intermixed with
the black. Its ear and its paw are like
that of a mouse, and it has a very lively
eye. I suppose it lives upon fruits and
seeds. It is most justly called the stinking

beast, for its odour is so strong, that it may be pursued upon the track twenty-four hours after it has passed. It goes very slow, and when the hunter approaches it, it squirts out far and wide such a stinking urine that neither man nor beast can hardly approach it. The Squirrels of Louisiana are like those of France, except one kind, which are called Flying-Squirrels, because they leap from one tree to another, tho' the distance between them be twenty-five or thirty feet. It is about the size of a rat, and of a deep ash-colour. Its two fore-legs are joined to its two hind-legs by two membranes, so that when it leaps it seems to fly, tho' it always leaps somewhat downwards. This animal may be very easily tamed; but even then it is best to chain it. There is another sort, not much bigger than a mouse, and of a bright bay-colour. These are so familiar that they will come out of the woods, will enter the houses, and sit within two yards of the people of the house, if they do not make any motion; and there they will feed on any maiz within their reach. I never was so well diverted in my life with the frolics of any animal, as I have been with the

our is so strong, that it
upon the track twenty-
it has passed. It goes
when the hunter approach-
out far and wide such a
at neither man nor beast
reach it. The Squirrels
like those of France,
which are called Flying-
le they leap from one tree
the distance between them
or thirty feet. It is about
and of a deep ash-colour.
eggs are joined to its two
two membranes, so that
it seems to fly, tho' it
somewhat downwards.
may be very easily tamed ;
n. it is best to chain it.
er sort, not much bigger
and of a bright bay-colour.
amiliar that they will come
ods, will enter the houses,
two yards of the people
if they do not make any
here they will feed on any
their reach. I never wasto
in my life with the frolics
as I have been with the

vivacity and attitudes of this little Squir-
rel.

The Porcupine is large and fine of his
kind ; but as he lives only upon fruit,
and loves cold, is most common about the
river Illinois, where the climate is some-
what cold, and there is plenty of wild fruits.
The skin, when stripped of the quills, is
white and brown. The natives dye the
white part of it yellow and red, and the
brown they dye black. They have like-
wise the art of splitting the skin, and ap-
plying it to many curious works, particu-
larly to trim the edges of their deer skins,
and to line small bark-boxes, which are

The Hedge-Hog of Louisiana is in every
respect the same with that of Europe.

The Otters are the same with those of
France, and there are but very few of
them to be seen.

Some Turtle are seen in this country ;
but very rarely. In the many hundred
leagues of country that I have passed over,
I have hardly ever seen above a hundred.

Frogs are very common, especially in
Lower Louisiana, notwithstanding the
great number of snakes that destroy them.
There are some that grow very large.

sometimes above 3 foot and an half long, and astonish strangers at first by their croaking, especially if they are in a hollow tree.

The Crocodile is very common in the river Mississippi. Altho' this amphibious animal be almost as well known as those I have just mentioned, I cannot however omit taking some notice of it. It lays its eggs in the month of May, when the sun is already hot in that country, and it deposits them in the most concealed place it can find among grass exposed to the heats of the south. The eggs are about the size of those of a goose, but longer in proportion. Upon breaking them you will find hardly any thing but white, the yolk being about the size of that of a young hen. This animal has his body always covered with slime, which is the case with all fishes that live in muddy waters. When he comes on shore his track is covered with that slime, as his belly trails on the ground, and this renders the earth very slippery in that part, especially as he returns by the same path to the water. He never hunts the fish upon which he subsists; but places himself in ambuscade, and catches them as they

foot and an half long,
ingers at first by their
ly if they are in a hollow

is very common in the
Altho' this amphibious
as well known as those
tioned, I cannot however
e notice of it. It lays
month of May, when
dy hot in that country,
them in the most concealed
among grass exposed to
ne south. The eggs are
those of a goose, but lon-
on. Upon breaking them
ardly any thing but white,
about the size of that of a
This animal has his body
d with slime, which is the
fishes that live in muddy
n he comes on shore his
ed with that slime, as his
he ground, and this renders
slippery in that part, espe-
returns by the same path to
e never hunts the fish upon
ists; but places himself in
and catches them as they

ambuscade, and catches them as they
pass. For that purpose he digs a hole
in the bank of the river, below the sur-
face of the water, where the current is
strong, having a small entrance, but large
enough within to turn himself round in.
The fish which are fatigued with the
strong current, are glad to get into the
smooth water in that corner, and there
they are immediately seized by the Cro-
codile.

The largest of all the reptiles of Loui-
siana is the Rattle-Snake: some of them
have been seen fifteen inches thick, and
long in proportion; but this species is
naturally shorter in proportion to their
thickness than the other kinds of serpents.
This serpent gets its name from several
hollow knots at its tail, very thin and dry,
which make a rattling noise. These knots,
tho' inserted into each other, are yet
quite detached, and only the first of them
is fastened to the skin. The number of
the knots, it is said, marks the age of
the serpent, and I am much inclined to
believe it; for as I have killed a great
number of them, I always observed that
the longer and thicker the serpent was,
it had the more knots or rattles. Its skin

is almost black; but the lower part of its belly is striped black and white.

As soon as it hears or sees a man it rouses itself by shaking its tail, which makes a rattling noise that may be heard at several paces distance, and gives warning to the traveller to be upon his guard. It is much to be dreaded when it coils itself up in a spiral line, for then it may easily dart upon a man. It thins the habitations of men, and by a singular providence, wherever it retires to, there the herb which cures its bite, is likewise to be found.

There are several other kinds of serpents to be seen here, some of which attempt to slip into the hen-houses to devour the eggs and new-hatched chickens. Others are green, about two feet long, and not thicker than a goose-quill; they frequent the meadows, and may be seen running over the spires of grats; such is their lightness and nimbleness.

Vipers are very rare in Lower Louisiana, as that reptile loves stoney grounds. In the highlands they are now and then to be met with, and there they quite resemble ours.

but the lower part of black and white. It hears or sees a man it shaking its tail, which noise that may be heard at a distance, and gives warning to be upon his guard. It is dreaded when it coils round a line, for then it may bite a man. It shuns the sun, and by a singular manner of retiring to, there cures its bite, is likewise

several other kinds of serpents here, some of which attend to the hen-houses to devour new-hatched chickens. Some are about two feet long, larger than a goose-quill; they are in meadows, and may be seen in the spires of grass; such is their nimbleness.

Very rare in Lower Louisiana, the reptile loves stony grounds. When they are now and then seen, and there they quite re-

Lizards are very common: there is a small kind of these that are called Camaleons, because they change their colour according to that of the place they pass over.

Among the spiders of Louisiana there is one kind that will appear very extraordinary. It is as large, but rather longer than a pigeon's egg, black, with gold-coloured specks. Its claws are pierced thro' above the joints. It does not carry its eggs like the rest, but encloses them in a kind of cup covered with its silk. It lodges itself in a kind of net made of the same silk, and hung to the branches of the trees. The web which this insect weaves is so strong, that it not only stops birds, but cannot even be broken by men without a considerable effort.

I never saw any Moles in Louisiana, nor heard of any being seen by others.

Birds are so very numerous in Louisiana, that if all the different kinds of them were known, which is far from being the case at present, the description of them alone would require an entire volume.

The Eagle, the king of birds, is smaller than the Eagle of the Alps; but he

is much more beautiful, being entirely white, excepting only the tips of his wings which are black. As he is also very rare, this is another reason for heightening his value to the natives, who purchase at a great price the large feathers of his wings, with which they ornament the Calumet or symbol of peace, as I have elsewhere described.

When speaking of the king of birds, I shall take notice of the Wren, called by the French Roitelet (petty King) which is the same in Louisiana as in France. The reason of its name in France will plainly enough appear from the following history. A magistrate, no less respectable for his probity than for the rank he holds in the law, assured me that, when he was at Sables d'Olonne in Poitou, on account of an estate which he had in the neighbourhood of that city, he had the curiosity to go and see a white Eagle which was then brought from America. After he had entered the house a Wren was brought, and let fly in the hall where the Eagle was feeding. The Wren perched upon a beam, and was no sooner perceived by the Eagle than he left off feeding, flew into a corner, and hung down his

beautiful, being entirely
only the tips of his
black. As he is also
is another reason for
value to the natives, who
great price the large sea-
ga, with which they or-
umet or symbol of peace,
here described.

ing of the king of birds, I
e of the Wren, called by
sitelet (petty King) which
Louisiana as in France.
its name in France will
h appear from the follow-
A magistrate, no less ref-
is probity than for the rank
law, assured me that, when
les d'Olonne in Poitou, on
estate which he had in the
d of that city, he had the
and see a white Eagle which
ught from America. After
ed the house a Wren was
let fly in the hall where the
ding. The Wren perched
and was no sooner perceiv-
gle than he left off feeding.
corner, and hung down his

head. The little bird, on the other hand,
began to chirp and appear angry, and a
moment after flew upon the neck of the
Eagle, and pecked him with the greatest
fury, the Eagle all the while hanging his
head in a cowardly manner, between his
feet. The Wren, after satisfying its an-
imosity, returned to the beam.

The Falcon, the Hawk, and the Es-
sel are the same as in France: but the
Falcons are much more beautiful than
ours.

The Carrion-Crow, or Turkey-Buffard,
is of the size and shape of a Turkey-cock;
his head is covered with red flesh, and
his plumage is black: he has a hooked
beak, but his toes are armed with very
small thorns, and are therefore very im-
proper for seizing his prey, which in-
deed he does not attempt to do: he
wants a gillay, or a magpie, to bring
upon it what he is capable of a kind
of prey. Accordingly he sits only up-
on the dead bodies that he is obliged to
meet with, and yet he will not touch
this kind of food, unless he has been
several people maintain, that the Carrion-
Crow, or Carrion, is the same as the
Vulture. The Carrion-Crow is the only
ling of it under pain of corporal punishment.

ment; for as they do not use the whole carcase of the buffaloes which they kill those birds eat what they leave, which otherwise by rotting on the ground, would, according to them, infect the air.

The Cormorant is shaped very much like a duck, but its plumage is different and much more beautiful. This bird frequents the shores of the sea and of lakes, but rarely appears in rivers. Its usual food is fish; but as it is very voracious, it likewise eats dead flesh; and this it can tear to pieces by means of a notch in its bill, which is about the size of that of a duck.

The Swans of Louisiana are like those of France, only they are larger. However, notwithstanding their bulk and their weight, they often rise so high in the air, that they cannot be distinguished but by their shrill cry. Their flesh is very good to eat, and their fat is a specific against cold humours. The natives set a great value upon the feathers of the Swan. Of the large ones they make the diadems of their sovereigns, hats, and other ornaments, and they weave the small ones as the peruke-makers weave hair, and make coverings of them.

do not use the whole
 faloes which they kill
 what they leave, which
 ting on the ground,
 to them, infect the air.
 is shaped very much
 its plumage is different
 beautiful. This bird
 ores of the sea and of
 appears in rivers. Its
 but as it is very voracious
 eats dead flesh; and
 pieces by means of a
 which is about the size

Louisiana are like those
 they are larger. How-
 anding their bulk and
 they often rise so high in
 cannot be distinguished
 rill cry. Their flesh is
 and their fat is a spec-
 humours. The natives
 use upon the feathers of
 the large ones they make
 of their sovereigns, hats,
 ments, and they weave
 as the peruke-makers
 make coverings of them

for their noble women. The young peo-
 ple of both sexes make tippets of the skin,
 without stripping it of its down.

The Canada-Goose is a water-fowl, of
 the shape of a Goose; but twice as large
 and heavy. Its plumage is ash-coloured;
 its eyes are covered with a black spot;
 its cries are different from those of a
 goose and shriller; its flesh is excellent.

The Pelican is so called from its
 large bill, and above all for its large
 pouch, which hangs from its neck, and has
 neither feathers nor down. It fills this
 pouch with fish, which it afterwards dis-
 gorges for the nourishment of its young.
 It never removes from the shores of the
 sea, and is often killed by sailors for the
 sake of the pouch, which when dried
 serves them as a purse for their tobacco.

The Geese abound upon the shores of
 the sea and of lakes, but are rarely seen
 in rivers.

In this country there are three kinds
 of Ducks; first the Indian Ducks, so
 called because they came originally from
 that country. These are almost entirely
 white, having but a very few grey fea-
 thers. On each side of their head they
 have a flesh of a more lively red than that

of the Turkey-cock, and they are larger than our tame Ducks. They are as tame as those of Europe, and their flesh when young is delicate, and of a fine flavour. The Perching-Ducks or Carolina Summer-Ducks, are somewhat larger than our Teals. Their plumage is quite beautiful, and so changeable that no painting can imitate it. Upon their head they have a beautiful tuft of the most lively colours, and their red eyes appear like flames. The natives ornament their capnets or pipes with the skin of their neck. Their flesh is very good; but when it is too fat it tastes oily. These Ducks are to be met with the whole year round; they perch upon the branches of trees, which the others do not, and it is from this they have their name.

The Teal are found in every season.

The Divers of Louisiana are the same with those of Europe: they no sooner see the fire in the pan, than they dive so suddenly that the shot cannot touch them, and they are therefore called Lead-Eaters.

The Saw-bill has the inside of its beak indented like the edge of a saw: it is said to live wholly upon shrimps, the shells of which it can easily break.

ck, and they are larger
cks. They are as tame
e, and their flesh when
e, and of a fine flavour.
ucks or Carolina Sum-
somewhat larger than
r plumage is quite beau-
ageable that no painting
Upon their head they
ruit of the most lively
eir red eyes appear like
ives ornament their ca-
ith the skin of their neck.
ry good ; but when it is
oily. These Ducks are
the whole year round ;
n the branches of trees,
s do not, and it is from
their name.

found in every season.
of Louisiana are the same
urope : they no sooner see
an, than they dive so sud-
thor cannot touch them,
efore called Lead-Eaters,
has the inside of its beak
e edge of a saw : it is said
upon shrimps, the shells of
fly break.

The Crane is a very common water-fowl ; it is larger than a Turkey, very lean, and of an excellent taste. It eats somewhat like beef, and makes very good soup.

The Flamingo has only a little down upon its head ; its plumage is grey, and its flesh good.

The Spatula has its name from the form of its bill, which is about seven or eight inches long, an inch broad towards the head, and two inches and a half towards the extremity ; it is not quite so large as a Wild Goose ; its thighs and legs are about the height of those of a Turkey. Its plumage is rose-coloured, the wings being brighter than any other part. This is a water-fowl, and its flesh is very good.

The Heron of Louisiana is not in the least different from that of Europe.

The Egret, or White Heron, is so called from tufts of feathers upon the wings near the body which hinder it from flying high ; it is a water-fowl with white plumage, but its flesh tastes very oily.

The Bec-croche, or Crook-bill, has indeed a crooked bill, with which it seizes the cray-fish upon which it subsists. Its flesh has that taste, and it is about the size of a capon.

The Indian Water-Hen, and the Green-Foot, are the same as in Europe.

The Hatchet-Bill is so called on account of its bill, which is red and formed like the edge of an ax. Its feet are also of a beautiful red, and it is therefore often called Red-Foot. As it lives upon shell-fish it never removes from the sea-coast, but upon the approach of a storm, which is always sure to follow its retiring into the inland parts.

The King-Fisher excels ours in nothing but in the beauty of its plumage, which is as various as the rain-bow. This bird, it is well known, goes always against the wind; but perhaps few people know that it preserves the same property when it is dead. I myself hung a dead one by a silk thread directly over a sea-compass, and I can declare it as a fact that the bill was always turned towards the wind,

The Sea-Lark and Sea-Snipe never quit the sea; their flesh may be eat, as it has very little of the oily taste.

The Frigate-Bird is a large bird, which in the day-time keeps itself in the air above the shore of the sea. It often rises very high, probably for exercise; for it feeds upon fish, and every night retires

Water-Hen, and the same as in Europe. Its bill is so called on account of its being red and formed like a scimitar. Its feet are also of the same colour, and it is therefore often called a Red-foot. As it lives upon shell-fishes, it moves from the sea-coast, upon the approach of a storm, and is sure to follow its retiring steps.

It excels ours in no beauty of its plumage, but is as beautiful as the rainbow. This bird, as is well known, goes always against the wind, perhaps few people know the same property when they see a dead one by itself hung over a sea-compass, as if it were a fact that the bill is directed towards the wind, and that the Black and Sea-Snipe never eat their flesh may be eat, as is the case of the oily taste.

This Bird is a large bird, which keeps itself in the air above the sea. It often rises high for exercise; for it is very active, and every night retires

to the coast. It appears larger than it really is, as it is covered with a great many feathers of a grey colour. Its wings are very long, its tail forked, and it cuts the air with great swiftness.

The Draught-Bird is a large bird, not much unlike the Frigate-Bird, as light, but not so swift. The under-part of its plumage is chequered brown and white, but the upper part is of greyish brown.

The Fool is of a yellowish colour, and about the size of a hen; it is so called, because it will suffer a man to approach it so near as to seize it with his hand; but even then it is too soon to cry victory, for if the person who seizes it does not take the greatest precaution, it will snap off his finger at one bite.

When those three last birds are observed to hover very low over the shore, we may most certainly expect an approaching storm. On the other hand, when the sailors see the Halcyons behind their vessel, they expect and generally meet with fine weather for some days.

Since I have mentioned the Halcyon, I shall here describe it. It is a small bird, about the size of a Swallow, but its beak is longer, and its plumage is violet-co-

loured. It has two streaks of a yellowish brown at the end of the feathers of its wings, which when it sits appear upon its back. When we left Louisiana near an hundred Halcyons followed our vessel for near three days: they kept at the distance of about a stone-cast, and seemed to swim, yet I could never discover that their feet were webbed, and was therefore greatly surpris'd. They probably live upon the small insects that drop from the outside of the vessel when sailing; for they now and then dived and came up in the same place. I have some suspicion that by keeping in the wake of the ship, they float after it without swimming; for when they happened to be out of the wake of the ship they were obliged to fly in order to come up with the ship again. This bird is said to build its nest of the glutinous froth of the sea close upon the shore, and to launch it when a land breeze arises, raising one of its wings in the form of a sail, which receiving the wind helps to carry it out to sea.

I shall now proceed to speak of the fowls which frequent the woods, and shall begin with the Wild-Turkey, which

two streaks of a yellowish
end of the feathers of its
when it sits appear upon
when we left Louisiana near
cyons followed our ves-
e days : they kept at the
at a stone-cast, and seem-
et I could never discover
were webbed, and was
y surprised. They proba-
ne small insects that drop
le of the vessel when sail-
now and then dived and
same place. I have some
y keeping in the wake of
float after it without swim-
men they happened to be
ke of the ship they were
n order to come up with
This bird is said to build
glutinous froth of the sea
e shore, and to launch it
reeze arises, raising one of
the form of a sail, which
wind helps to carry it out

w proceed to speak of the
frequent the woods, and
th the Wild-Turkey, which

is very common all over the colony.
The feathers of the Turkey are of a dusk-
ish grey, edged with a streak of gold
colour, near half an inch broad. In the
small feathers the gold-coloured streak
is not above one tenth of an inch broad.
The natives make fans of the tail, and
of four tails joined together the white
make an umbrella.

The Pheasant is the most beautiful bird
that can be painted, and in every respect
entirely like that of Europe. Their rarity
in my opinion makes them more esteem-
ed than they deserve. I would at any time
prefer a slice or the fillet of a Buffalo to
any Pheasant.

The Partridges of Louisiana are not lar-
ger than a Wood-Pigeon. Their plumage
is exactly the same with that of our grey
Partridges ; they have also the horse shoe
upon the breast ; they perch upon trees,
and are seldom seen in flocks. Their cry
consists only of two strong notes, some-
what resembling the name given them
Ho-ouy. Their flesh is white and deli-
cate, but, like all the other game in this
country, it has no fumet, and only ex-
celly in the fine taste.

The Woodcock is very rare, because
it is only to be met with in inhabited

countries. Its flesh is white, but rather plumper and more delicate than that of ours, which is owing to the plenty and goodness of its fruit.

The Snipe is much more common than the Woodcock, and in this country is far from being shy. Its flesh is white, and of a much better relish than that of ours.

I am of opinion that the Quail is very rare in Louisiana; I have sometimes heard it, but never saw it; nor knew any Frenchman that ever did.

Some of our colonists have thought proper to give the name of *Ottolan* to a small bird which has the same plumage, but in every other respect does not in the least resemble it.

The Corbiseau is as large as the Woodcock, and very common. Its plumage is varied with several shady colours, and is different from that of the Woodcock; its feet and beak are also longer, which last is crooked and of a reddish yellow colour; its flesh is likewise firmer and better tasted.

The Parroquet of Louisiana is not very large. Its plumage is usually of a fine sea-green, with a pale rose-coloured spot upon the crown which brightens into red towards the beak, and fades off into green

ess is white, but rather
re delicate than that of
wing to the plenty and
uit.

much more common than
and in this country is far
Its flesh is white, and
relish than that of ours.
on that the Quail is very
na; I have sometimes
ver saw it, nor knew any
ever did.

colonists have thought
the name of Otolan to a
has the same plumage,
er respect does not in the

u is as large as the Wood-
y common. Its plumage
several shady colours, and
n that of the Woodcock;
ak are also longer, which
t and of a reddish yellow
h is likewise firmer and bet-

uet of Louisiana is not very
umage is usually of a fine
h a pale rose-coloured spot
u which brightens into red
ak, and fades off into green

towards the body. It is with difficulty
that it learns to speak, and even then it
rarely practises it, resembling in this the
natives themselves, who speak little.

The Turtle-Dove is the same with
that of Europe, but few of them are
seen here.

The Wood-Pigeons are seen in such
prodigious numbers, that I do not fear to
exaggerate, when I affirm that they some-
times cloud the sun. One day on the
banks of the Mississippi I met with a flock
of them which was so large, that before
they all passed I had leisure to fire with
the same piece four times at them. But
the rapidity of their flight was so great,
that tho' I do not fire ill, with my four
shots I brought down but two.

These birds come to Louisiana only in
the winter and remain in Canada during
the summer, where they devour the corn,
as they eat the acorns in Louisiana. The
Canadians have used every art to hinder
them from doing so much mischief, but
without success. But if the inhabitants
of those colonies were to go a fowling
for those birds in the manner that I have
done, they would insensibly destroy them.
When they walk among the high forest
trees, they ought to remark under what

trees the largest quantity of dung is to be seen. Those trees being once discovered, the hunters ought to go out when it begins to grow dark, and carry with them a quantity of brimstone which they must set fire to in so many earthen plates placed at regular distances under the trees. In a very short time they will hear a shower of Wood-Pigeons falling to the ground, which, by the light of some dried cases, they may gather into flocks, as soon as the brimstone is extinguished.

I shall here give an instance that proves not only the prodigious number of those birds, but also their singular instinct. In one of my journeys at land, when I happened to be upon the bank of the river, I heard a confused noise, which seemed to come along the river from a considerable distance below us. As the sound continued uniformly I embarked, as fast as I could, on board the pettyauger, with four other men and steered down the river, and keeping in the middle, that I might go to any side that best suited me. But how great was my surprise when I approached the place from whence the noise came, and observed it to proceed from a thick short pillar on the bank of the river. When I drew still nearer to

quantity of dung is to trees being once discovered ought to go out when it is dark, and carry with it of brimstone which they burn in so many earthen plates at distances under the trees. At that time they will hear a great number of Wood-Pigeons falling to the ground by the light of some fire, which may gather into flocks, as the fire is extinguished. I give an instance that proves the prodigious number of those birds and their singular instinct. In the mornings at land, when I happened upon the bank of the river, I heard a great noise, which seemed to come from the river from a considerable distance below us. As the sound was formerly I embarked, as fast as I could, and boarded the pettyauger, with a great number of men and steered down the river, in the middle, that I might be in the best suited place. It was my surprise when I was in the place from whence the noise proceeded it to proceed from a short pillar on the bank of the river. When I drew still nearer to

it, I perceived that it was formed by a legion of wood-pigeons, who kept continually flying up and down successively among the branches of an ever-green oak, in order to beat down the acorns with their wings. Every now and then some alighted to eat the acorns which they themselves or the others had beat down; for they all acted in common, and eat in common; no avarice nor private interest appearing among them, but each labouring as much for the rest as for himself.

Crows are common in Louisiana. Whatever their appetite may be, they dare not for the carrion crow approach any carcass.

I never saw any Ravens in this country, and if there be any they must be very rare.

The Owls are larger and whiter than in France, and their cry is much more frightful. The Little Owl is the same with ours, but much more rare. These two birds are more common in Lower Louisiana than in the higher.

The Magpie resembles those of Europe in nothing but its cry; it is more delicate, is quite black, has a different manner of flying, and chiefly frequents the coasts.

The Blackbirds are black all over, not excepting their bills nor their feet, and are almost as large again as ours. Their notes are different, and their flesh is hard.

There are two sorts of Starlings in this country; one grey and spotted, and the other black. In both the tip of the shoulder is of a bright red. They are only to be seen in winter; and then they are so numerous, that upwards of 300 of them have been taken at once in a net. A beaten path is made near a wood, and after it is cleaned and smoothed, it is strewed with rice. On each side of this path is stretched a long narrow silken net, with very small meshes, and made to turn over at once by strings fastened to the stick that stretches the end of it. The starlings no sooner alight to pick up the grain, than the fowler, who lies concealed with the strings in his hand, pulls the net over them.

The Wood-pecker is much the same as in Europe; but here there are two kinds of them; one has grey feathers spotted with black; the other has the head and the neck of a bright red, and the rest of the body as the former. This bird lives upon the worms which it finds in rotten wood, and not upon ants, as is

are black all over, not bills nor their feet, and are again as ours. Their feet, and their flesh is hard. Sorts of Starlings in this country are spotted, and the tip of the shoulder is red. They are only taken at once in a net made near a wood, and smoothed, it is fine. On each side of this is a long narrow silken net, all meshes, and made to be by strings fastened to stretch the end of it. The fowler, who lies concealed in his hand, pulls the

pecker is much the same but here there are two, one has grey feathers spotted; the other has the head of a bright red, and the rest as the former. This bird finds worms which it finds in and not upon ants, as the

modern author would have us believe, for want of having considered the nature of the things which he relates. The bird, when looking for its food, examines the trunks of trees that have lost their bark; it clasps by its feet with its belly close to the tree, and hearkens if it can hear a worm eating the wood; in this manner it leaps from place to place upon the trunk till it hears a worm, then it pierces the wood in that part, pricks the worm with its hard and pointed tongue, and draws it out. The arms which nature has furnished it with are very proper for this kind of hunting; its claws are hard and very sharp; its beak is formed like a little ax, and is very hard; its neck is long and flexible to give proper play to its beak; and its hard tongue, which it can extend three or four inches, has a most sharp point, with several beards that help to hold the prey.

The Swallows of this country have that part yellow which ours have white, and they, as well as the martins, live in the woods.

The Nightingale differs in nothing from ours in respect to its shape or plumage, unless that it has the bill a little longer. But in this it is particular that

it is not shy, and sings thro' the whole year, tho' rarely. It is very easy to entice them to your roof, where it is impossible for the cats to reach them, by laying something for them to eat upon a lath, with a piece of the shell of a gourd which serves to hold their nest. You may in that case depend upon their not changing their habitation.

The Pope is a bird that has a red and black plumage. It has got that name perhaps because its colour makes it look somewhat old, and none but old men are promoted to that dignity; or because its notes are soft, feeble, and rare; or lastly, because they wanted a bird of that name in the colony, having two other kinds named cardinals and bishops.

The Cardinal owes its name to the bright red of the feathers, and to a little cowl on the hind part of the head, which resembles that of the bishop's ornament, called a Camail. It is as large as a black-bird but not so long. Its bill and toes are large, strong, and black. Its notes are so strong and piercing that they are only agreeable in the woods. It is remarkable for laying up its winter provision in the summer, and near a Paris bushel of maize has been found in its re-

sings thro' the whole
It is very easy to en-
root, where it is impos-
sible to reach them, by laying
them to eat upon a lath,
in the shell of a gourd which
is their nest. You may in
this manner see them upon their not changing

bird that has a red and
It has got that name
because its colour makes it look
like none but old men are
of dignity; or because its
plumage is so noble, and rare; or lastly,
because it is a bird of that name
having two other kinds
of bishops.

owes its name to the
feathers, and to a little
part of the head, which
is of the bishop's ornament,

It is as large as a black-
bird. Its bill and toes
are red, and black. Its notes
are loud and piercing that they are
heard in the woods. It is re-
markable for staying up its winter pro-
miser, and near a Paris
has been found in its re-

treat, artfully covered, first with leaves,
and then with small branches, with only
a little opening for the bird itself to en-
ter.

The Bishop is a bird smaller than the
linnet; its plumage is a violet-coloured
blue, and its wings, which serve it for
a cope, are entirely violet colour. Its
notes are so sweet, so variable, and ten-
der, that those who have once heard it,
are apt to abate in their praises of the
nightingale. I had such great pleasure
in hearing this charming bird, that I left
an oak standing very near my apartment,
upon which he used to come and perch,
tho' I very well knew, that the tree,
which stood single, might be overturned
by a blast of wind, and fall upon my
house to my great loss.

The Humming Bird is not larger even
with its feathers than a large beetle. The
colour of its feathers is variable accord-
ing to the light they are exposed in; in
the sun they appear like enamel upon
a gold ground, which delights the eyes.
The longest feathers of the wings of this
bird are not much more than half an inch
long, its bill is about the same length,
and pointed like an awl; and its tongue
resembles a sowing needle; its feet are

like those of a large fly. Notwithstanding its little size, its flight is so rapid, that it is always heard before it is seen. Altho' like the bee it sucks the flowers, it never rests upon them, but supports itself upon its wings, and passes from one flower to another with the rapidity of lightning. It is a rare thing to catch a humming bird alive; one of my friends however had the happiness to catch one. He had observed it enter the flower of a convolvulus, and as it had quite buried itself to get at the bottom, he ran forwards, shut the flower, cut it from the stalk, and carried off the bird a prisoner. He could not however prevail upon it to eat, and it died four days after.

The Tronion is a small bird about the size of a sparrow; its plumage is likewise the same, but its beak is slender. Its notes seem to express its name.

The French settlers raise in this province turkies, fowls, capons, &c. of an excellent taste. The pigeons for their fine flavour and delicacy are preferred by Europeans to those of any other country. The Guinea Fowl is here delicious.

In Louisiana we have two kinds of Silk Worms; one was brought from France, the other is natural to the country.

ge fly. Notwithstand-
its flight is so rapid,
heard before it is seen.
ce it sucks the flowers, it
n them, but supports it-
ga, and passes from one
ner with the rapidity of
a rare thing to catch a
live; one of my friends
happiness to catch one.
d it enter the flower of a
nd as it had quite buried
he bottom, he ran for-
e flower, cut it from the
ed off the bird a prison-
not however prevail upon
died four days after.
is a small bird about the
row; its plumage is like-
but its beak is slender.
to express its name.
settlers raise in this pro-
fowls, capons, &c. of an
The pigeons for their
nd delicacy are preferred
to those of any other coun-
inea Fowl is here delicious.
a we have two kinds of Silk
was brought from France,
atural to the country.

The Tobacco Worm is a caterpillar
of the size and figure of a silk worm. It
is of a fine sea-green colour, with rings
of silver colour; on its rump it has a
sting near a quarter of an inch long.
These insects quickly do a great deal of
mischief, therefore care is taken every
day while the tobacco is rising, to pick
them off and kill them.

In summer Caterpillars are sometimes
found upon the plants, but these insects
are very rare in the colony. Glow-worms
are here the same as in Europe.

Butterflies are not very common; the
consequence of there being fewer cater-
pillars; but they are of incomparable
beauty, and have the most brilliant co-
lours. In the meadows are to be seen
black grasshoppers, which almost always
walk, rarely leap, and still seldom fly.
They are about the size of the finger or
thumb, and their head is shaped some-
what like that of a horse. Their four
small wings are of a most beautiful pur-
ple. Cats are very fond of grasshoppers.

The Bees of Louisiana lodge in the
earth to secure their honey from the
ravages of the bears. Some few indeed
bind their combs in the trunks of trees as
in Europe; but by far the greatest num-

ber in the earth in the lofty forests, where the bears seldom go.

The Flies are of two kinds, one a yellowish brown, and the other black.

The Wasps in this country take up their abode near the houses where they smell victuals. Several French settlers endeavoured to root them out of their neighbourhood; but I acted otherwise, for reflecting, that no flies are to be seen where the wasps frequent, I invited them by hanging up a piece of flesh in the air.

The Quick Stinger is a long and yellowish fly, and it receives its name from its stinging the moment it lights. The common flies of France are very common also in Louisiana.

The Cantharides, or Spanish Flies; are very numerous, and larger than in Europe: they are of such an acid nature, that if they but slightly touch the skin as they pass a pretty large blister instantly rises. These flies live upon the leaves of the oak.

The Green Flies appear only every other year, and the natives superstitiously look upon their appearance as a presage of a good crop. It is a pity that the cattle are so greatly molested by them; that they cannot remain in the fields; for

in the lofty forests, where
go.
of two kinds, one a yellow
and the other black.
in this country take up
for the houses where they
Several French settlers
root them out of their
; but I acted otherwise,
that no flies are to be seen
as frequent, I invited them
a piece of flesh in the air.
Stinger is a long and yellow
it receives its name from
moment it lights. The
of France are very common
na.
rides, or Spanish Flies; are
, and larger than in Europe.
e of such an acid nature,
at slightly touch the skin as
pretty large blister instantly
flies live upon the leaves
n Flies appear only every
and the natives superstitiously
their appearance as a presage
of evil. It is a pity that the cat-
tly molested by them, that
remain in the fields; for

they are extremely beautiful, and twice
as large as bees.

Fire Flies are very common; when the
night is serene they are so very numerous,
that if the light they dart out were con-
stant, one might see as clearly as in fine
moonshine.

The Fly-Ants, which we see attach
themselves to the flower of the Acacia,
and which disappear when that flower is
gone, do not proceed from the common
ants. The fly-ants, tho' shaped like the
other kind, are however longer and lar-
ger. They have a square head; their co-
lour is a brownish red bordered with
black; they have four red and grey wings,
and fly like common flies, which the
other ants do not even when they have
wings.

The Dragon Flies are pretty numerous;
they do not want to destroy them because
they feed upon Musketos, which is one
of the most troublesome kind of insects.

The Musketos are famous all over A-
merica for their multitude, the trouble-
someness of their buzzing, and the venom
of their stings, which occasion an insup-
portable itching, and often form so many
small ulcers, if the person stung does not
immediately put some spittle on the

Δ Δ

would. In open places they are less tormenting; but still they are troublesome; and the best way of driving them out of the houses is to burn a little brimstone in the mornings and evenings. The smoke of this infallibly kills them, and the smell keeps others away for several days. An hour after the brimstone has been burnt, the apartments may be safely entered into by men.

By the same means we may rid ourselves of the flies and musquitos, whose sting is so painful and so frequent during the short time they fly about; for they do not rise till about sun-set, and they retire at night. This is not the case with the Burning Fly. These, tho' not much larger than the point of a pin, are insupportable to the people who labour in the fields. They fly from sun-setting, and the wounds they give burn like fire.

The Laver is an insect about an inch and a quarter long, a little more than a quarter broad; and but the tenth part of an inch thick. It enters the houses by the smallest crevices, and in the night time it falls upon dishes that are even covered with a plate, which renders it very troublesome to those whose houses are only built of wood. But they are so yelth-

means we may rid ourselves of flies and musketoes, whose stings are so frequent during the day they fly about; for they come about sun-set, and they bite. This is not the case with mosquitos. These, tho' not much larger than the point of a pin, are insupportable to people who labour in the sun. They fly from sun-setting, and they give burns like fire. Mosquitos are an insect about an inch long, a little more than a line thick; and but the tenth part of an inch high. It enters the houses by the crevices, and in the night it stings people as that are even covered with plates, which renders it very disagreeable to those whose houses are on the ground. But they are so pestilential,

In Louisiana there are white ants, which seem to love dead wood. Persons who have been in the East Indies have assured me, that they are quite like those which in that country are called Cancrula, and that they would eat thro' glass, which I never had the experience of. There are in Louisiana, red, black, and flying ants.

Tho' there is an incredible quantity of fishes in this country, I shall however be very concise in my account of them; because during my abode in the country they were not sufficiently known; and the people were not experienced enough in the art of catching them. The mouth of the rivers being very deep, and the Mississippi, as I have mentioned, being between thirty-eight and forty fathoms, from its mouth to the fall of St. Anthony, it may be easily conceived that the instruments used else where cannot be of any use in Louisiana, because they cannot go to the bottom of the rivers, or ar

least so deep as to prevent the fish from escaping. The line therefore can be only used, and it is with it they catch all the fish that are eaten by the feeders upon the river. I proceed to an account of those fish.

The Barbel or catfish is of two sorts, the large and the small. The first is about four feet long, and the smallest of this sort that is ever seen is two feet long, the young ones doubtless keeping at the bottom of the water. This kind has a very large head, and a round body, which gradually lessens towards the tail. The fish has no scales, nor any bones, excepting that of the middle: its flesh is very good and delicate, but in a small degree very insipid, which is easily remedied; in other respects it eats very much like the fresh cod of the country.

The small is from a foot to two feet in length. Its head is shaped like that of the other kind; but its body is not so round nor so pointed at the tail.

The Carp of the river Mississippi is monstrous. None are seen under two feet long; and many are met with three and four feet in length. The carps are not so very good in the lower part of the river; but the higher one goes the finer

to prevent the fish from
ine therefore can be on y
ish it they catch all the
by the leaders upon the
d to an account of those

r catfish is of two sorts,
e small. The first is a-
ong, and the smallest of
ever seen is two feet long,
doubtless keeping at the
water. This kind has a
ad, and a round body,
y lessens towards the tail.
no scales, nor any bones,
of the middle: its flesh is
l delicate, but in a small
spid, which is easily reme-
respects it eats very much
ood of the country.

s from a foot to two feet in
ead is shaped like that of
d; but its body is not so
pointed at the tail.

of the river Mississippi is mon-
e are seen under two feet
any are met with three and
length. The carps are not
in the lower part of the ri-
e higher one goes the finer

they are, on account of the plenty of sand
in those parts. A great number of carps
are carried into the lakes that are filled
by the overflowing of the river, and in
those lakes they are found of all sizes, in
great abundance, and of a better relish
than those of the river.

The Burgo-Breaker is an excellent fish;
it is usually a foot, and a foot and a half
long: it is round, with gold-coloured
scales. In its throat it has two bores,
with a surface like that of a file to break
the shell-fish named Burgo. Tho' deli-
cate it is nevertheless very firm. It is
best when not much boiled.

The Ring-Skate is found in the river
up as far as New Orleans, but no higher.
It is very good, and no way tough. In
other respects it is exactly like that of
France.

The Spatula is so called, because from
its snout a substance extends about a foot
in length in the form of an apothecary's
spatula. This fish which is about two
feet in length, is neither round or flat,
but square, having at its sides and in the
under part bones that form an angle like
those of the back.

No Pikes are caught above a foot and
a half long. As this is a voracious fish,

perhaps the armed-fish pursues it both from jealousy and appetite. The pike besides being small is very rare.

The Choupic or Welshman is a very beautiful fish; many people mistake it for the trout, as it takes a fly in the same manner. But it is very different from the trout, as it prefers muddy and dead water to a clear stream, and its flesh is so soft that it is only good when fried.

The Sardine or small Pitchard of the river Mississippi, is about three or four fingers in breadth, and between six and seven inches long; it is good and delicate. One year I salted about the quantity of forty pints of them, and all the French who eat of them acknowledged them to be sardines from their flesh, their bones, and their taste. They appear only for a short season, and are caught by the natives, when swimming against the strongest current, with nets made for that purpose only.

The Patassa, so called by the natives for its flatness, is the roach or fresh-water mullet of this country.

The Armed-Fish or Pike has its name from its arms, and its scaly mail. Its arms are its very sharp teeth about the twentieth of an inch in diameter, and as

ed-fish pursues it both
and appetite. The pike be-
is very rare.

or Welshman is a very
many people mistake it
s it takes a fly in the same
it is very different from
prefers muddy and dead
stream, and its flesh is fo
ly good when fried.

or small Pilchard of the
oi, is about three or four
width, and between six and
ng; it is good and delicate.
ed about the quantity of
them, and all the French
m acknowledged them to
m their flesh, their bones,
e. They appear only for a
and are caught by the na-
swimming against the strong-
with nets made for that pur-

a, so called by the natives
, is the roach or fresh-water
country.

de-fish or Pike has its name
, and its scaly mail. Its
very sharp teeth about the
inch in diameter, and as

much distant from each other, and near
half an inch long. The interval of the
larger teeth is filled with shorter teeth.
These arms are a proof of its voracity.
Its mail is nothing but its scales, which are
white, as hard as ivory, and about the
tenth of an inch in thickness. They are
near an inch long, about half as much
in breadth, end in a point, and have two
cutting sides. There are two ranges of
them down the back, shaped exactly like
the head of a spoutoon, and opposite to
the point the scale has a little flank, a-
bout three tenths of an inch long which
the natives insert into the end of their
arrows, making the scale serve for a
head. The flesh of this fish is hard and not
relishing.

There are a great number of Ele's in
the river Mississippi, and very large ones
are found in all the rivers and creeks.

The whole lower part of the river a-
bounds in Crayfish. Upon my first arri-
val in the colony the ground was covered
with little hillocks, about six or seven in-
ches high, which the Crayfish had made
for taking the air out of the water; but
since dikes have been raised for keeping
off the river from the low grounds, they
no longer shew themselves. Whenever

they are wanted they fish for them with they leg of a frog, and in a few moments they will catch a large dish of them.

The Shrimps are diminutive Crayfish; they are usually about three inches long, and of the size of the little finger. Oysters and Mussels are plenty.

The largest of the shell-fish on the coast is the Burgo. There is another fish much smaller and of a different shape. Its hollow shell is strong and beautiful, and the flat one is generally black; some blue ones are found and are much esteemed. These shells have long been in request for tobacco-boxes.

they fish for them with
and in a few moments
large dish of them.

the diminutive Crayfish;
about three inches long,
of the little finger. Oysters
are plenty.

of the shell-fish on the
coast. There is another fish
and of a different shape.
is strong and beautiful,
is generally black; some
and are much esteemed.
have long been in re-
co-boxes.

A P P E N D I X.

EXTRACT FROM THE JOURNAL OF THE
HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE
UNITED STATES.

WEDNESDAY, JANUARY 12, 1803.

*The Committee, to whom was referred a
Resolution proposing an appropriation of
two millions of dollars, in addition to the
sum usually appropriated for the pur-
poses of intercourse between the United
States and foreign nations, submit the
following*

—REPORT.—

THE object of this resolution is to en-
able the executive to commence, with
more effect, a negotiation with the French
and Spanish governments relative to the
purchase from them of the island of New-
Orleans, and the provinces of East and
West Florida. This object is deemed

highly important and has received the attentive consideration of the Committee. The free and unobstructed navigation of the river Mississippi, is a point to which the attention of the general government has been directed, ever since the peace of 1783, by which our independence as a nation was finally acknowledged. The immense tract of country owned by the United States, which lies immediately on the Mississippi, or communicates with it by means of large navigable rivers rising within our boundaries, renders its free navigation an object, not only of inestimable advantage, but of the very first necessity. The Mississippi forms the western boundary of the United States from its source to the 31st degree of north latitude, and empties itself into the Gulf of Mexico about the 29th degree of north latitude. It furnishes the only outlet through which the produce of the Indiana Territory, of the states of Ohio, Kentucky and Tennessee, and of the western parts of Pennsylvania and Virginia, and a portion of the Mississippi Territory, can be transported to a foreign market or to the ports of the Atlantic states. From the 31st degree of north latitude which is the southern boundary of the United States, to the

(ii)

and has received the attention of the Committee. Unobstructed navigation of the Mississippi, is a point to which the general government has ever since the peace of 1763, considered our independence as a necessary and acknowledged. The territory of country owned by the United States, which lies immediately on the west, or communicates with it by large navigable rivers rising within its boundaries, renders its free navigation an object, not only of necessity, but of the very first necessity. The Mississippi forms the western boundary of the United States from the 31st degree of north latitude to the 29th degree of north latitude, and affords the only outlet through which the produce of the Indiana Territory, the States of Ohio, Kentucky and Tennessee, and of the western parts of Virginia, and a portion of the Mississippi Territory, can be transported to a foreign market or to the ports of the United States. From the 31st degree of north latitude which is the southern boundary of the United States, to the

(iii)

north of the river, the Territory on each side has heretofore been in possession of the Spanish government; the province of Louisiana lying to the west, and that of East Florida, with the island of New Orleans, to the east. Although the United States have insisted on an unobstructed right to pass up and down the river from its source to the sea, yet if admitted in its most ample latitude, will not secure to them the full advantages of navigation. The strength and rapidity of the current of the Mississippi are known to render its ascent so extremely difficult, that few vessels of burthen have attempted to go as far as our boundary. This circumstance obliges the citizens of the western country to carry their produce down the river in boats, from which it is put on board of ships capable of sustaining a sea voyage. It follows, therefore, that to enjoy the full benefits of navigation, some place should be fixed, which sea vessels can approach without great inconvenience, where the American produce may be deposited until it is again shipped to be carried abroad. This great point was secured to us in the year 1795 by the Spanish government, who agreed in the treaty of *San Lorenzo el Real*, that Ame-

ricans should have the right of deposit at New-Orleans. This right has been used from that time till a late period; but the conduct of the Intendant at that place, shews how liable the advantageous navigation of the river is to interruption, and strongly points out the impolicy of relying on a foreign nation for benefits which our citizens have a right to expect should be secured to them by their own government. It is hoped that the port of New-Orleans may again be opened, before any very material injuries arise; but should this be the case, or if as the treaty provides, a new place of deposit should be assigned, the late occurrence shews the uncertainty of its continuance. Experience proves that the caprice or the interested views of a single officer, may perpetually subject us to the alternative of submitting to injury, or of resorting to war.

The late violation of our treaty with Spain necessarily leads to the enquiry how far the western country may be affected in other points, not connected with New-Orleans. The Mississippi Territory extends from the confines of Georgia to the river Mississippi, and from the 31st to the 35th degree of north latitude. It is estimated to contain more than fifty millions

the right of deposit at
This right has been used
all a late period; but the
intendant at that place,
the advantageous navi-
or is to interruption, and
at the impolicy of relying
ion for benefits which
a right to expect should
m by their own govern-
ed that the port of New-
n be opened, before any
juries arise; but should
or if as the treaty pro-
ce of deposit should be
occurrence shews the
continuance. Experi-
the caprice or the inter-
single officer, may perpe-
to the alternative of sub-
, or of resorting to war.
tion of our treaty with
leads to the enquiry how
country may be affected
ot connected with New-
Mississippi Territory ex-
nsines of Georgia to the
and from the 31st to the
orth latitude. It is esti-
more than fifty millions



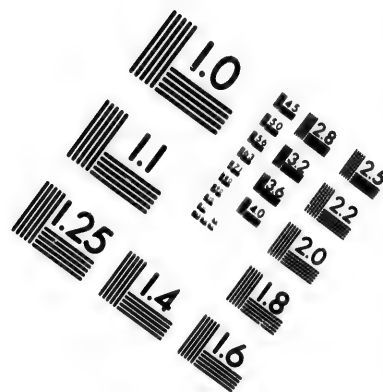
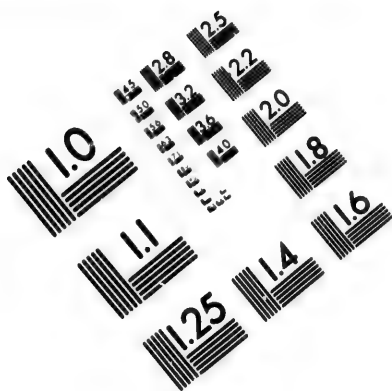
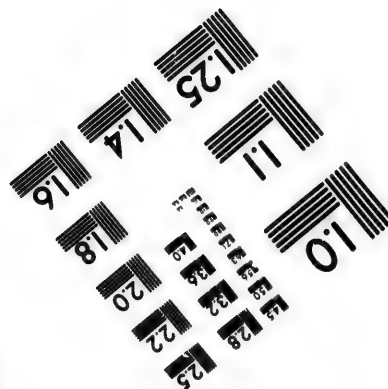
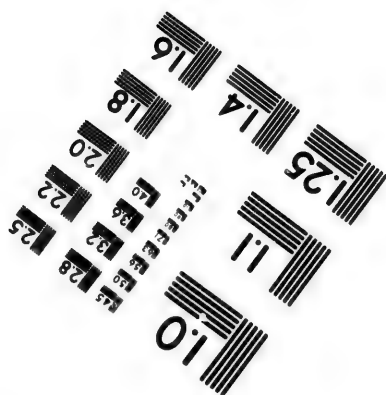
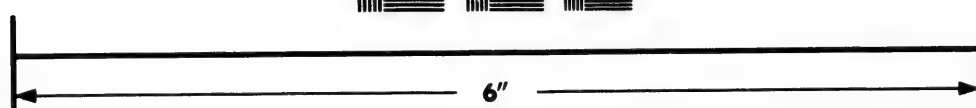
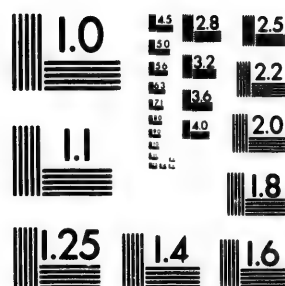


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1984

of
ges
me
and
ou
to
ma
da
thi
we
ho
im
ma
po
me
ag
by
it
or
w
th
th
M
ny
w
th
ne
to
vi

of acres, and from its numerous advantages must one day or other possess an immense population. The variety, richness and abundance of its productions, hold out to settlers the strongest inducements to resort thither, and the United States may safely calculate on drawing a considerable revenue from the sale of lands in this, as well as in other quarters of the western country. The value of these, however, may be diminished, and the sale impeded or advanced by the impression made on the public mind, by shutting the port of New-Orleans, and by eventual measures which may be adopted to guard against similar injuries.

West Florida is bounded on the North by the Mississippi Territory, from which it is separated by no natural boundary; on the east by the river Apalachicola which divides it from East Florida; on the west by the river Mississippi, and on the south by the Gulf of Mexico. The Mississippi Territory is intersected by many large and valuable rivers which rise within its own boundaries, and meander through it in a general direction from north to south, but empty themselves into the Gulf of Mexico through the province of West Florida. In fact with the

exception of that part of the territory which lies immediately on the Mississippi, the whole must depend on the Mobile and the Apalachicola, with their numerous branches, and on some other rivers of inferior note, for the means of sending its produce to market, and of returning to itself such foreign supplies, as the necessities or convenience of its inhabitants may require. In these rivers too the eastern parts of the state of Tennessee are deeply interested, as some of the great branches of the Mobile approach very near to some of those branches of the Tennessee river, which lie above the great Muscle shoals. Even if it should prove difficult to connect them, yet the land carriage will be shorter, and the route to the sea more direct, than the river Tennessee furnishes. These rivers possess likewise an advantage which is denied to the Mississippi. As their sources are not in the mountains, and their course is through a level country, their currents are gentle and the tide flows considerably above our boundary. This circumstance together with the depth of water which many of them afford, render them accessible to sea-vessels; and ships of two hundred tons burthen may ascend for several

part of the territory
ely on the Mississippi,
pend on the Mobile
a, with their numer-
on some other rivers
the means of sending
et, and of returning
n supplies, as the ne-
nce of its inhabitants
se rivers too the east-
ate of Tennessee are
as some of the great
obile approach very
ose branches of the
ch lie above the great
en if it should prove
them, yet the land
rter, and the route to
than the river Ten-
These rivers possess
ge which is denied to
their sources are not
and their course is
untry, their currents
ide flows considerably
. This circumstance
depth of water which
d, render then acces-
and ships of two hun-
may ascend for several

hundred miles into the heart of the Mis-
sissippi territory. These rivers, however,
which run almost exclusively within our
own limits, and which it would seem as
if nature had intended for our own bene-
fit, we must be indebted to others for the
beneficial use of, so long as the province
of West Florida shall continue in the pos-
session of a foreign nation. If the pro-
vince of West Florida were of itself an in-
dependent empire, it would be the inter-
est of its government to promote the free-
dom of trade, by laying open the mouths
of the rivers to all nations, this having
been the policy of those powers who pos-
sess the mouths of the Rhine, the Da-
nube, the Po and the Tagus, with some o-
thers. But the system of colonization,
which has always heretofore prevailed,
proves, that the mother country is ever
anxious to engross to itself the trade of its
colonies, and affords us every reason to
apprehend that Spain will not readily ad-
mit us to pass through her territory to
carry on a trade either with each other
or with foreign nations. This right we
may insist on, and perhaps it may be
conceded to us; but it is possible that it
may be denied. At all events it may prove

the source of endless disagreement and perpetual hostility.

In this respect East Florida may not perhaps be so important, but its acquisition is nevertheless deemed desirable. From its junction with the state of Georgia at the river St. Mary's it stretches nearly four hundred miles into the sea, forming a large peninsula, and has some very fine harbors. The southern point, Cape Florida, is not more than one hundred miles distant from the Havannah, and the possession of it may be beneficial to us in relation to our trade with the West Indies. It would likewise make our whole territory compact, would add considerably to our sea coast, and by giving us the Gulf of Mexico for our southern boundary, would render us less liable to attack, in what is now deemed the most vulnerable part of the Union.

From the foregoing view of facts, it must be seen that the possession of New-Orleans and the Floridas will not only be acquired for the convenience of the United States, but will be demanded by their most imperious necessities. The Mississippi and its branches, with those other rivers above referred to, drain an extent of country not less perhaps than

disagreement and

Florida may not
ant, but its acqui-
deemed desirable.
th the state of Geo-
Mary's it stretches
miles into the sea,
insula, and has some
The southern point,
more than one hun-
rom the Havannah,
it may be beneficial
our trade with the
would likewise make
compact, would add
r sea coast, and by
f of Mexico for our
would render us less
what is now deemed
e part of the Union.
oing view of facts, it
he possession of New-
Floridas will not only
ne convenience of the
will be demanded by
ious necessities. The
branches, with those
e referred to, drain an
not less perhaps than

(ix)

one half of our whole territory, con-
taining at this time one eighth of our po-
pulation and progressing with a rapidity
beyond the experience of any other na-
tion. The Floridas and New Orleans
command the only outlets to the sea,
and our best interests require that we
should get possession of them. This re-
quisition however, arises not from a dis-
position to increase our territory; for
neither the Floridas nor New Orleans, of-
fer any other inducements than their mere
geographical relation to the United States.
But if we look forward to the free use of
the Mississippi, the Mobile, the Apala-
chicola and the other rivers of the west,
by ourselves and our posterity, New Or-
leans and the Floridas must become a
part of the United States either by pur-
chase or by conquest.

The great question then which presents
itself is, shall we at this time lay the foun-
dation for future peace, by offering a fair
and equivalent consideration; or shall we
hereafter incur the hazards and the hor-
rors of war?—The government of the
United States is differently organized
from any other in the world. Its object
is the happiness of man; its policy
and its interest, to pursue right by

(2)

right means. War is the great scourge of the human race, and should never be resorted to but in cases of the most imperious necessity. A wise government will avoid it, when its views can be attained by peaceful measures. Princes fight for glory, and the blood and treasure of their subjects is the price they pay. In all nations, the people bear the burthen of war, and in the United States, the people rule. Their representatives are the guardians of their rights, and it is the duty of those representatives to provide against any event, which may, even at a distant day, involve the interests and the happiness of the nation. We may indeed have our rights restored to us by treaty, but there is a want of fortitude in applying temporary remedies to permanent evils ; thereby imposing on our posterity a burthen which we ourselves ought to bear. If the purchase can be made, we ought not to hesitate. If the attempt should fail, we shall have discharged an important duty. War may be the result ; but the American nation, satisfied with our conduct, will be animated by one soul, and will unite all its energies in the contest. Foreign powers will be convinced it is not a war of aggrandisement on our part, and will

x)

is the great scourge
and should never be
uses of the most impe-
wife government will
ews can be attained by
Princes fight for glo-
and treasure of their
they pay. In all na-
ear the burthen of war,
States, the people rule.
es are the guardians of
is the duty of those re-
vide against any event,
at a distant day, involve
ne happiness of the na-
indeed have our rights
treaty, but there is x
in applying temporary
manent evils ; thereby
sterity a burthen which
nt to bear. If the pur-
e, we ought not to hesi-
mpt should fail, we shall
n important duty. War
t ; but the American
with our conduct, will
ne soul, and will unite
the contest. Foreign
onvinced it is not a war
at on our part, and will

therefore feel no unreasonable jealousies
towards us. We shall have proved that
our object was justice ; it will be seen
that our propositions were fair ; and it
will be acknowledged that our cause is
honorable. Should alliances be neces-
sary they may be advantageously formed.
We shall have merited and shall there-
fore possess general confidence. Our
measures will stand justified not only to
ourselves and our country, but to the
world.

In another point of view perhaps, it
would be preferable to make the purchase,
as it is believed that a smaller sum would
be required for this object, than would
necessarily be expended, if we should at-
tempt to take possession by force ; the ex-
pences of a war being indeed almost in-
calculable. The committee have no in-
formation before them, to ascertain the
amount for which the purchase can be
made, but it is hoped, that with the as-
sistance of two millions of dollars in
hand, this will not be unreasonable. A
similar course was pursued for the purpose
of settling our differences with the regen-
cy of Algiers, by an appropriation of one
million of dollars prior to the commence-
ment of the negotiation, and we have

since experienced its beneficial effects. Under these impressions therefore the committee recommend the adoption of the resolution referred to them in the following words, viz.

Resolved, That a sum of two millions of dollars in addition to the provision heretofore made be appropriated to defray any expences which may be incurred in relation to the intercourse between the United States and foreign nations; to be paid out of any money that may be in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, and to be applied under the direction of the President of the United States; who if necessary is hereby authorized to borrow the same or any part thereof, an account whereof, as soon as may be, shall be laid before Congress.

ii)
s beneficial effects.
essions therefore the
end the adoption of
red to them in the
sum of two millions
on to the provision
appropriated to de-
which may be incur-
e intercourse between
nd foreign nations ;
y money that may be
otherwise appropri-
ed under the direction
of the United States ;
hereby authorized to
any part thereof, as
s soon as may be, shall
gress.

T R E A T Y

*Between the United States of America and
the French Republic.*

ARTICLE I.

WHEREAS, by article the third of the treaty concluded at St. Idelfonso, the 9th Vendemaire, an.9 (1st October, 1800,) between the first consul of the French republic, and his Catholic majesty, it was agreed as follows :

“ His Catholic majesty promises and engages on his part, to cede to the French republic, six months after the full and entire execution of the conditions and stipulations herein relative to his royal highness the duke of Parma, the colony or province of Louisiana, with the same extent that it now has in the hands of Spain, and that it had when France possessed it ; and such as it should be after the treaties subsequently entered into between Spain and other states.”

And whereas, in pursuance of the treaty and particularly of the third article, the French republic, has an incontestible title to the domain and to the possession of the

Appen.

said territory; the first consul of France desirous to give the United States a strong proof of his friendship, doth hereby cede to the said United States, in the name of the French Republic, for ever and in full sovereignty, the said territory with all its rights and appurtenances, as fully and in the same manner as they have been acquired by the French republic in virtue of the above-mentioned treaty, concluded by his Catholic majesty,

ARTICLE II

In the cession made by the preceding article are included the adjacent islands belonging to Louisiana, all public lots and squares, vacant lands and all public buildings, fortifications, barracks and other edifices which are not private property. The archives, papers and documents, relative to the domain and sovereignty of Louisiana and its dependencies, will be left in the possession of the commissaries of the United States, and copies will be afterwards given in due form to the magistrates and municipal officers of such of the said papers and documents as may be necessary to them.

Article. III. The inhabitants of the ceded territory shall be incorporated in the

the consul of France
United States a strong
p, doth hereby cede
ates, in the name of
for ever and in full
territory with all its
ances, as fully and in
they have been ac-
h republic in virtue
oned treaty, conclu-
majesty,

LE II
de by the preceding
the adjacent islands
iana, all public lots
t lands and all pub-
ications, barracks and
ich are not private
hives, papers and do-
the domain and sove-
a and its dependencies,
possession of the com-
ted States, and copies
given in due form to
d municipal officers of
pers and documents as
them.
e inhabitants of the ce-
be incorporated in the

union of the United States, and admitted
as soon as possible, according to the prin-
ciples of the federal constitution, to the
enjoyment of all the rights, advantages
and immunities of citizens of the United
States; and in the mean time they shall be
maintained and protected in the free en-
joyment of the liberty, property, and the
religion which they profess.

Article IV. There shall be sent by the
government of France a commissary to
Louisiana, to the end that he do every act
necessary, as well to receive from the of-
ficers of his Catholic majesty the said
country and its dependencies, in the name
of the French republic, if it has not been
already done, as to transmit it in the name
of the French republic to the commissary
or agent of the United States.

Article V. Immediately after the rati-
fication of the present treaty by the pre-
sident of the United States, and in case
that of the first consul, shall have been
previously obtained, the commissary of
the French republic shall remit all mili-
tary posts of New-Orleans, & other parts
of the ceded territory, to the commissary
or commissaries named by the president
to take possession; the troops whether of

France or Spain, who may be there, shall cease to occupy any military post from the time of taking possession, and shall be embarked as soon as possible in the course of three months after the ratification of this treaty.

Article VI. The United States promise to execute such treaties and articles as may have been agreed between Spain and the tribes and nations of Indians, until, by mutual consent of the United States and the said tribes or nations, other suitable articles shall have been agreed upon.

Article VII. As it is reciprocally advantageous to the commerce of France and the United States to encourage the communication of both nations for a limited time in the country ceded by the present treaty, until general arrangements relative to the commerce of both nations may be agreed between the contracting parties that the French ships coming directly from France or any of her colonies, loaded only with the produce and manufactures of France or her said colonies; and the ships of Spain coming directly from Spain or any of her colonies, loaded only with the produce or manufactures of Spain or her colonies, shall be admitted

may be there, shall
military post from the
cession, and shall be
possible in the course
the ratification of this
United States promise
ies and articles as
between Spain and
of Indians, until,
the United States
nations, other suit-
e been agreed upon.
reciprocally advanta-
ce of France and
to encourage the
oth nations for a li-
untry ceded by the
eneral arrangements
erce of both nations
een the contracting
ch ships coming di-
any of her colonies
produce and man-
or her said colonies;
in coming directly
her colonies, loaded
ce or manufactures of
es, shall be admitted

during the space of twelve years in the
port of New-Orleans, and in all other le-
gal ports of entry within the ceded terri-
tory, in the same manner as the ships of
the United States coming directly from
France or Spain or any of their colonies
without being subject to any other or
greater duty on merchandize, or any o-
ther or greater tonnage than that paid by
the citizens of the United States.
During the space of time above men-
tioned, no other nation shall have a right
to the same privileges in the ports of the ce-
ded territory; the twelve years shall com-
mence three months after the exchange
of ratification, if it shall take place in
France, or three months after it shall have
been notified at Paris to the French go-
vernment, if it shall take place in the U-
nited States; it is however, well under-
stood that the object of the above article
is to favor the manufactures, commerce,
freight and navigation of France and of
Spain, so far as relates to the importations
that the French and Spanish shall make
into the said ports of the United States,
without in any sort affecting the regula-
tions that the United States may make con-
cerning the exportation of the produce
and merchandize of the United States, or

any right they may have to make such regulations.

Article VIII. In future and forever after the expiration of the twelve years, the ships of France shall be treated upon the footing of the most favoured nations in the ports abovementioned.

Article IX. The particular Convention signed this day by the respective ministers having for its object to provide for the payment of debts due to the citizens of the United States by the French Republic, prior to the 30th September, 1800, (8th Vendemiaire, an.9) is approved, and to have its execution in the same manner as if it had been inserted in this present treaty, and it shall be ratified in the same form and in the same time, so that the one shall not be ratified distinct from the other.

Another particular convention signed at the same date as the present treaty, relative to a definitive rule between the contracting parties, is in the like manner approved, and will be ratified in the same form and in the same time, and jointly.

Article X. The present treaty shall be ratified in good and due form, and the ratifications shall be exchanged in the

i)
ve to make such re-
future and forever
f the twelve years,
all be treated upon
oft favoured nations
mentioned.
articular Convention
e respective minist-
et to provide for the
ue to the citizens of
the French Repub-
h September, 1800,
(.9) is approved, and
in the same manner
erted in this present
ratified in the same
me time, so that the
ied distinct from the

ar convention signed
ne present treaty, re-
ule between the con-
n the like manner ap-
ratified in the same
e time, and jointly.
resent treaty shall be
d due form, and the
e exchanged in the

(xix)

space of six months after the date of the signature by the ministers plenipotentiary, or sooner if possible.

IN FAITH WHEREOF the respective plenipotentiaries have signed these articles in the French and English languages; declaring nevertheless that the treaty was originally agreed to in the French language--and have thereunto adixed their seals.

Done at Paris, the 10th day of Floreal, in the 11th year of the French Republic, and the 30th of April, 1803.

BARBE MARBOIS.

ROB. R. LIVINGSTON.

JAMES MONROE.

CONVENTION,

*Between the United States of America, and
the French Republic.*

Article 1. The government of the United States engages to pay the French government, in the manner specified in the following article, the sum of sixty millions of francs, independent of the sum which shall be fixed by another convention for the payment of the debts

due by France to citizens of the United States.

Article II. For the payment of the sum of sixty millions of Francs, mentioned in the preceding article, the United States shall create a stock of eleven millions two hundred and fifty thousand dollars, bearing an interest of six per cent, per annum, payable half yearly in London, Amsterdam or Paris, amounting by the half year to three hundred and thirty seven thousand five hundred dollars, according to the proportions which shall be determined by the French government to be paid at either place: the principal of the said stock to be reimbursed at the Treasury of the United States in annual payments of not less than three millions of dollars each; of which the first payment shall commence fifteen years after the date of the exchange of ratifications; this stock shall be transferred to the government of France, or to such person or persons as shall be authorized to receive it, in three months at most after the exchange of the ratifications of this treaty and after Louisiana shall be taken possession of in the name of the government of the United States.

IX)

citizens of the United

the payment of the
ons of Francs, men-
eding article, the U-
create a stock of eleven
red and fifty thousand
an interest of six per
payable half yearly in
am or Paris, amount-
r to three hundred and
and five hundred dol-
the proportions which
ned by the French go-
aid at either place: the
aid stock to be reimburs-
y of the United States
ts of not less than three
s each, of which the
shall commence fifteen
ate of the exchange of
s stock shall be trans-
ernment of France, or
r persons as shall be au-
eive it, in three months
e exchange of the ratifi-
treaty and after Louisi-
ken possession of in the
ernment of the United

(xxi)

It is further agreed, that if the French government should be desirous of disposing of the said stock to receive the capital in Europe, at shorter terms, that its measures for that purpose shall be taken so far as to favor, in the greatest degree possible, the credit of the United States and to raise to the highest price the said stock.

Article III. It is agreed that the dollar of the United States, specified in the present convention, shall be fixed at five francs 3333—10000th or five livres, eight sous tournois.

The present convention shall be ratified in good and due form, and the ratifications shall be exchanged in the space of six months, to date from this day, or sooner if possible.

IN FAITH OF WHICH, the respective plenipotentiaries have signed the above articles, both in the French and English languages, declaring, nevertheless, that the present treaty has been originally agreed on and written in the French language to which they have hereunto affixed their seals.

Done at Paris the tenth of Floreal,

(xxii)

eleventh year of the French Republic,
(30th April, 1803.)

ROBERT R. LIVINGSTON,
BARBE MARBOIS,
JAMES MONROE.

CONVENTION,

*Between the United States of America and
the French Republic.*

Article I. The debts due by France to citizens of the United States, contracted before the 8th Vendemaire, ninth year of the French Republic, (30th Sept. 1800) shall be paid according to the following regulations, with interest at six per cent to commence from the period when the account and vouchers were presented to the French government.

Article II. The debts provided for by the preceding article are those whose result is comprised in the conjectural note annexed to the present convention, and which, with the interest, cannot exceed the sum of twenty millions of francs.—The claims comprised in the said note which fall within the exceptions of the following articles, shall not be admitted to the benefit of this provision.

the French Republic;
 LIVINGSTON,
 ARBE MARBOIS,
 ROE.

ENTION,

States of America and
 French Republic.

debts due by France to
 United States, contracted
 Vendemiaire, ninth year
 Republic, (30th Sept.
 did according to the fol-
 lows, with interest at six
 pence from the period
 unt and vouchers were
 French government.
 he debts provided for by
 article are those whose re-
 in the conjectural note
 present convention, and
 interest, cannot exceed
 ty millions of francs.—
 apprised in the said note
 in the exceptions of the
 s, shall not be admitted
 this provision.

Article III. The principal and inte-
 rests of the said debts shall be discharged,
 by the United States, by orders drawn
 by their minister plenipotentiary on their
 treasury; those orders shall be payable,
 sixty days after the exchange of ratifica-
 tions of the treaty and the conventions
 signed this day, and after possession shall
 be given of Louisiana by the commissaries
 of France to those of the United States.

Article IV. It is expressly agreed,
 that the preceding articles shall compre-
 hend no debts but such as are due to
 citizens of the United States, who have
 been and are yet creditors of France, for
 supplies for embargoes and prizes made
 at sea, in which the appeal has been pro-
 perly lodged within the time mentioned
 in the said convention, 8th Vendemiaire.

Article V. The preceding articles shall
 apply only, first, to captures of which
 the council of prizes shall have ordered
 restitution, it being well understood that
 the claimant cannot have recourse to
 the United States otherwise than he
 might have had to the government of
 the French republic, and only in case of
 insufficiency of the captors; 2d. the
 debts mentioned in the said fifth article

of the convention contracted before the 8th Vendemaire, ann. 9 (30th September, 1800) the payment of which has been heretofore claimed of the actual government of France, and for which the creditors have a right to the protection of the United States; the said 5th article does not comprehend prizes whose condemnation has been or shall be confirmed; it is the express intention of the contracting parties not to extend the benefit of the present convention to reclamations of American citizens, who shall have established houses of commerce in France, England or other countries than the United States, in partnership with foreigners, and who by that reason and the nature of their commerce ought to be regarded as domiciliated in the places where such houses exist. All agreements and bargains concerning merchandize, which shall not be the property of American citizens, are equally excepted from the benefit of the said convention, saving, however, to such persons their claims in like manner as if this treaty had not been made.

Article VI. And that the different questions which may arise under the pre-

contracted before the
ann. 9 (30th Septem-
ber) of which has
been claimed of the actual
France, and for which
a right to the protec-
tion of the States; the said 5th
article comprehend prizes
which have been or shall be
the express intention of
the parties not to extend the
present convention to re-
American citizens, who
possessed houses of com-
England or other coun-
United States, in part-
foreigners, and who by
the nature of their com-
be regarded as domicili-
s where such houses ex-
cise and bargains con-
dize, which shall not
of American citizens,
deprived from the benefit of
protection, saving, however,
their claims in like man-
ner had not been made.
And that the different
may arise under the pre-

ceding article may be investigated, the
ministers plenipotentiary of the United
States shall name three persons,—
who shall act from the present and
provisionally, and who shall have full
power to examine, without removing the
documents, all the accounts of the dif-
ferent claims already liquidated by the
bureaus established for this purpose by
the French republic, and to ascertain
whether they belong to the classes desig-
nated by the present convention and the
principles established in it; or if they are
not in one of its exceptions and on their
certificate, declaring that the debt is due
to an American citizen or his representa-
tive, and that it existed before the 8th
Vendémiaire, 9th year (30th Sept. 1800)
the debtor shall be entitled to an order on
the treasury of the United States in the
manner prescribed by the third article.

Article VII. The same agents shall like-
wise have power, without removing the
documents to examine the claims which
are prepared for verification, and to cer-
tify those which ought to be admitted by
uniting the necessary qualifications, and
not being comprised in the exceptions
contained in the present convention.

Article VIII. The same agents shall likewise examine the claims which are not prepared for liquidation, and certify in writing those which in their judgment ought to be admitted to liquidation.

Article IX. In proportion as the debts mentioned in these articles shall be admitted, they shall be discharged with interest at six per cent by the treasury of the United States.

Article X. And that no debt which shall not have the qualifications above mentioned, that no unjust or exorbitant demand may be admitted, the commercial agent of the United States at Paris, or such other agent as the minister plenipotentiary of the United States shall think proper to nominate, shall assist at the operations of the bureaux, and cooperate in the examinations of the claims : and if this agent shall be of opinion that any debt is not completely proved, or if he shall judge that it is not comprised in the principles of the fifth article above mentioned, and if notwithstanding his opinion, the bureaux established by the French government should think that it ought to be liquidated, he shall transmit his observations, to the board established by the United States, who, without removing

xvi)

the same agents shall examine the claims which are to be liquidated, and certify in their judgment as to the proportion as the debts and articles shall be admitted to be discharged with interest by the treasury of

that no debt which does not meet the qualifications above mentioned, and which is unjust or exorbitant, shall be admitted, the committee of the United States at Paris, or the minister of the United States, shall nominate, shall assist the bureaux, and commissions of the claims: he shall be of opinion that the claim is completely proved, or if he is not comprised in the 8th article above mentioned, notwithstanding his opinion, established by the French government, that it ought to be admitted, he shall transmit his observations to the board established by the law of 1800, without removing

(xxvii)

documents, shall make a complete examination of the debt and vouchers which support it, and report the result to the minister of the United States. The minister of the United States shall transmit his observations, in all such cases, to the minister of the treasury of the French Republic, on whose report the French government shall decide definitively in every case.

The rejection of any claim shall have no other effect than to exempt the United States from the payment of it, the French government reserving to itself the right to decide definitely on such claim so far as it concerns itself.

Article XI. Every necessary decision shall be made in the course of a year, to commence from the exchange of ratifications, and no reclamation shall be admitted afterwards.

Article XII. In case of claims for debts contracted by the government of France with citizens of the United States, since the 8th Vendemiaire, 9th year (30th September, 1800) not being comprised in this convention, may be pursued, and the payment demanded in the same manner as if it had not been made.

(xxviii)

Article XIII. The present convention shall be ratified in good and due form, and the ratifications shall be exchanged in six months from the date of the signature of the ministers plenipotentiary, or sooner if possible.

IN FAITH OF WHICH, the respective plenipotentiaries have signed the above articles, both in the French and English languages, declaring, nevertheless, that the present treaty has been originally agreed on and written in the French language to which they have hereunto affixed their seals.

Done at Paris the tenth of Floreal, eleventh year of the French Republic, (30th April, 1803.)

ROBERT R. LIVINGSTON,
BARRE MARBOIS,
JAMES MONROE.

xxviii)

the present convention
in good and due form,
as shall be exchanged
on the date of the signa-
ture of plenipotentiary, or

WHICH, the respec-
tives have signed the a-
ct in the French and
English, declaring, neverthe-
less, that the present treaty has been
made on and written in the
French, to which they have
affixed their seals.

the tenth of Floreal,
the French Republic,

3.)
LIVINGSTON,
BARRÉ MARBOIS,
PROE.

AN ACT

*To enable the president of the United States
to take possession of the territories ceded by
France to the United States, by the treaty
concluded at Paris, on the thirtieth of
April last; and for the temporary govern-
ment thereof.*

Be it enacted, by the senate and house
of representatives of the United States of
America in congress assembled, That the
president of the United States be, and he
is hereby authorized to take possession of,
and occupy the territory ceded by France
to the United States, by the treaty con-
cluded at Paris on the thirtieth day of A-
pril last, between the two nations; and
that he may for that purpose, and in or-
der to maintain in the said territories the
authority of the United States, employ
any part of the army and navy of the U-
nited States, and of the force authorized
by an act passed the third day of March
last, entitled "an act directing a detach-
ment from the militia of the United
States, and for erecting certain arsenals,"
which he may deem necessary, and so
much of the sum appropriated by the said
act as may be necessary, is hereby appro-

(xxx)

appropriated for the purpose of carrying this act into effect; to be applied under the direction of the president of the United States.

Sect. 2. *And be it further enacted*, that until the end of the present session of congress, or until congress shall have made provision for the temporary government of the said territories, all the military, civil and judicial powers exercised by the officers of the existing government of the same shall be vested in such person and persons, and shall be exercised in such manner as the president of the United States shall direct, for maintaining and protecting the inhabitants of the said Louisiana in the full and free enjoyments of their liberty, property and religion.

xx)

pose of carrying this
be applied under the
esident of the United

it further enacted, that
present session of con-
gress shall have made
temporary government
ies, all the military,
owers exercised by the
ng government of the
d in such person and
be exercised in such
esident of the United
for maintaining and
nhabitants of the said
l and free enjoyments
perty and religion.



AN
ACCOUNT
OF
LOUISIANA.

(Communicated by the President to the House
of Representatives).

*The object of the following pages is to consoli-
date the information respecting the present
state of Louisiana, furnished to the Exe-
cutive by several individuals among the
best informed upon that subject.*

Of the province of Louisiana no ge-
neral map, sufficiently correct to be de-
pended upon, has been published, nor
has any been yet procured from a private
source. It is indeed probable, that sur-
veys have never been made upon so ex-
tensive a scale as to afford the means of
laying down the various regions of a
country, which, in some of its parts,
appears to have been but imperfectly ex-
plored.

BOUNDARIES

The precise boundaries of Louisiana, westwardly of the Mississippi, though very extensive, are at present involved in some obscurity. Data are equally wanting to assign with precision its northern extent. From the source of the Mississippi, it is bounded eastwardly by the middle of the channel of that river to the 31st degree of latitude: thence, it is asserted upon very strong grounds, that according to its limits, when formerly possessed by France, it stretches to the East, as far, at least, as the river Perdido, which runs into the bay of Mexico, eastward of the Mobile.

It may be consistent, with the view of these notes to remark, that Louisiana, including the Mobile settlements, was discovered and peopled by the French, whose monarchs made several grants of its trade, in particular to Mr. Crozat in 1712, and some years afterwards, with his acquiescence, to the well known company projected by Mr. Law. By a secret convention on the 3d of November, 1762, the French government ceded so much of the province as lies beyond the Mississippi, as well as the island of New-

xii)

DARIES

boundaries of Louisiana, the Mississippi, though at present involved in data are equally wanting in precision its northern source of the Mississippi eastwardly by the middle of that river to the latitude: thence, it is as strong grounds, that limits, when formerly once, it stretches to the east, as the river Perinto the bay of Mexico the Mobile. Hence, with the view of remark, that Louisiana, Mobile settlements, was peopled by the French, made several grants of particular to Mr. Crozat in years afterwards, with to the well known company Mr. Law. By a feon the 3d of November, each government ceded to province as lies beyond the well as the island of New-

Orleans, to Spain, and, by the treaty of peace which followed in 1763, the whole territory of France and Spain eastward of the middle of the Mississippi to the Iberville, thence through the middle of that river, and lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain to the Sea, was ceded to Great Britain. Spain having conquered the Floridas from Great Britain during our revolutionary war, they were confirmed to her by the treaty of peace of 1783. By the treaty of St. Ildefonso, of the 11th of October, 1800, his Catholic Majesty promises and engages on his part to cede back to the French Republic, six months after the full and entire execution of the conditions and stipulations therein contained, relative to the Duke of Parma, "the colony or province of Louisiana, with the same extent that it actually has in the hands of Spain, that it had when France possessed it, and such as it ought to be after the treaties subsequently entered into between Spain and other states." This treaty was confirmed and enforced by that of Madrid, of the 21st March, 1801. From France it passed to us by the treaty of the 30th of April last, with a reference to the above clause, as descriptive of the limits ceded.

DIVISIONS OF THE PROVINCE.

The province as held by Spain, including a part of West Florida, is laid off into the following principal divisions : Mobile, from Balise to the city, New-Orleans and the country on both sides of Lake Ponchartrain, first and second German coasts, Catahanose, Fourche, Venezuela, Iberville, Galvez-Town, Baton-Rouge, Pointe Coupee, Atacapas, Opelousas, Ouachita, Avoyelles, Rapide, Natchitoches, Arkansas, and the Illinois.

In the Illinois there are commandants, at New-Madrid, St. Genevieve, New-Bourbon, St. Charles and St. Andrews, all subordinate to the commandant general.

Baton-Rouge having been made a government, subsequently to the treaty of limits, &c. with Spain, the posts of Manchac and Thompson's Creek, or Feliciana, were added to it.

Chapitoulas has sometimes been regarded as a separate command, but is now included within the jurisdiction of the city. The lower part of the river has likewise had occasionally a separate commandant.

Many of the present establishments are separated from each other by immense

THE PROVINCE.

held by Spain, in
 est Florida, is laid off
 principal divisions :
 to the city, New-Or-
 try on both sides of
 first and second Ger-
 nose, Fourche, Ve-
 galvez-Town, Baton-
 pee, Atacapas, Ope-
 Avoyelles, Rapide,
 nfas, and the Illinois,
 are are commandants,
 Genevieve, New-
 es and St. Andrews,
 the commandant ge-

ing been made a go-
 ntly to the treaty of
 pain, the posts of
 pson s Creek, or Fe-
 to it.

sometimes been re-
 ce command, but is
 n the jurisdiction of
 er part of the river
 ationally a separate

nt establishments are
 other by immense

and trackless deserts, having no commu-
 nication with each other by land, except
 now and then a solitary instance of its
 being attempted by hunters, who have to
 swim rivers, expose themselves to the in-
 clemency of the weather, and carry their
 provisions on their backs for a time, pro-
 portioned to the length of their journey.
 This is particularly the case on the west
 of the Mississippi, where the communica-
 tion is kept up only by water, between
 the capital and the distant settlements ;
 three months being required to convey in-
 telligence from the one to the other by the
 Mississippi. The usual distance accom-
 plished by a boat in ascending, is five
 leagues per day. The rapidity of the
 current in the spring season especially,
 when the waters of all the rivers are
 high, facilitates the descent, so that the
 same voyage by water, which requires
 three or four months to perform from
 the capital, may be made to it in from
 twelve to sixteen days. The principal
 settlements in Louisiana are on the Mis-
 sissippi, which begins to be cultivated a-
 bout twenty leagues from the sea, where
 the plantations are yet thin, and owned
 by the poorest people. Ascending, you
 see them improve on each side, till you

reach the city, which is situated on the East bank, on a bend of the river, 35 leagues from the sea.

CHAPITOULAS, FIRST AND SECOND GERMAN COASTS, CATAHANOSE, FOURCHE AND IBERVILLE.

The best and most improved are above the city, and comprehend, what is there known by the Paroisse de Chapitoulas, Premier and Second Cote des Allemands, and extend 16 leagues.

Above this begins the parish of Catahanose, or first Acadian settlement, extending eight leagues on the river. Adjoining it and still ascending is the second Acadian settlement or parish of the Fourche, which extends about six leagues. The parish of Iberville then commences and is bounded on the east side by the river of the same name, which though dry a great part of the year, yet, when the Mississippi is raised, it communicates with the lakes Maurepas and Ponchartrain, and through them with the sea, and thus forms what is called the island of New Orleans. Except on the point just below the Iberville, the country from New Orleans is settled the whole way along the river, and presents a scene of

(xxvi)

ch is situated on the
nd of the river, 35
lea.

FIRST AND SECOND GER-
CATAHANOSE, FOURCHE

ost improved are above
ehend, what is there
roisse de Chapitoulas,
nd Cote des Allemands,
gues.

as the parish of Cata-
cadian settlement, ex-
ues on the river. Ad-
ascending is the second
ent or parish of the
xtends about six leagues.
rville then commences
n the east side by the
name, which though
f the year, yet, when
aised, it communicates
aurepas and Ponchar-
gh them with the sea,
hat is called the island

Except on the point
erville, the country from
settled the whole way a-
nd presents a scene of

(xxxvii)

uninterrupted plantations in sight of each
other, whose fronts to the Mississippi are
all cleared, and occupy on that river from
5 to 25 acres with a depth of 50; so that
a plantation of 5 acres in front contains
200. A few sugar plantations are formed
in the parish of Catahanose, but the
remainder is devoted to cotton and provi-
sions, and the whole is an excellent soil
incapable of being exhausted. The plan-
tations are but one deep on the island of
New Orleans, and on the opposite side of
the river as far as the mouth of the Iber-
ville, which is 35 leagues above New Or-
leans.

**BAYOU DE LA FOURCHE.—ATACAPAS AND
OPELOUSAS.**

About 25 leagues from the last men-
tioned place on the west side of the Mis-
sissippi, the creek or Bayou of the Four-
che, called in old maps La Riviere des
Chitamaches, flows from the Mississippi,
and communicates with the sea to the
west of the Balise. The entrance of the
Mississippi is navigable only at high wa-
ter, but will then admit of craft of from
60 to 70 tons burthen. On both banks
of this creek are settlements, one planta-
tion deep, for near 15 leagues, and they

Appen.

are divided into two parishes. The settlers are numerous, though poor, and the culture is universally cotton. On all creeks making from the Mississippi, the soil is the same as on the bank of the river, and the border is the highest part of it, from whence it descends gradually to the swamp. In no place on the low lands is there depth more than suffices for one plantation, before you come to the low grounds incapable of cultivation. This creek affords one of the communications to the two populous and rich settlements of Atacapas and Opelousas formed on and near the small rivers Teche and Vermillon which flow into the bay of Mexico. But the principal and swiftest communication is by the Bayou or creek of Plaquemines, whose entrance into the Mississippi is seven leagues higher upon the same side, and 32 above New-Orleans. These settlements abound in cattle and horses, have a large quantity of good land in their vicinity, and may be made of great importance. A part of their produce is sent by sea to New Orleans, but the greatest part is carried in batteaux by the creeks above mentioned.

parishes. The settlements are though poor, and the soil is very fertile. On all sides of the Mississippi, the land is the highest part of the river, and descends gradually to the place on the low bank, more than sufficient for the cultivation of the soil. One of the most populous and rich settlements is that of the Teche, which flows into the bay of the principal and swiftest is by the Bayou or river, whose entrance is seven leagues higher up, and 32 above New-Orleans. Settlements abound in the vicinity, and may be of importance. A part of the best part is carried in the creeks above mentioned.

BATON ROUGE AND ITS DEPENDENCIES.

Immediately above the Iberville, and on both sides of the Mississippi lies the parish of Manchac, which extends 4 leagues on the river, and is well cultivated. Above it commences the settlement of Baton Rouge, extending about 9 leagues. It is remarkable as being the first place, where the high land is contiguous to the river, and here it forms a bluff from 30 to 40 feet above the greatest rise of the river. Here the settlements extend a considerable way back on the east side; and this parish has that of Thompson's creek and Bayou Sara subordinate to it. The mouth of the first of these creeks is about 49 leagues from New-Orleans, and that of the latter 2 or 3 leagues higher up. They run from north-east to south-west, and their head waters are north of the 31st degree of latitude. Their banks have the best soil, and the greatest number of good cotton plantations of any part of Louisiana, and are allowed to be the garden of it.

POINTE COUPEE AND FAUSSE RIVIERE.

Above Baton Rouge, at the distance of 50 leagues from New-Orleans, and on the west side of the Mississippi is Pointe

Coupee, a populous and rich settlement, extending 8 leagues along the river. Its produce is cotton. Behind it, on an old bed of the river, now a lake, whose outlets are closed up, is the settlement of Fausse Riviere, which is well cultivated.

In the space now described from the sea as high as and including the last mentioned settlement, is contained three-fourths of the population, and seven-eighths of the riches of Louisiana.

From the settlement of Pointe Coupee on the Mississippi to Cape Girardeau, above the mouth of the Ohio, there is no land on the west side, that is not overflowed in the spring to the distance of 8 or 10 leagues from the river, with from 2 to 12 feet of water, except a small spot near New Madrid ; so that in the whole extent there is no possibility of forming a considerable settlement contiguous to the river on that side. The eastern bank has in this respect a decided advantage over the western, as there are on it many situations which effectually command the river.

RED RIVER AND ITS SETTLEMENTS.

On the west side of the Mississippi, 70 leagues from New-Orleans, is the mouth

s and rich settlement,
s along the river. Its
Behind it, on an old
ow a lake, whose out-
is the settlement of
which is well cultiva-

described from the
including the last men-
t, is contained three-
population, and seven-
es of Louisiana.

ment of Pointe Coupee
to Cape Girardeau, a-
f the Ohio, there is no
side, that is not over-
ing to the distance of 8
a the river, with from
ater, except a small spot
; so that in the whole
possibility of forming a
ment contiguous to the

The eastern bank has
decided advantage over
ere are on it many si-
fectually command the

ND ITS SETTLEMENTS.

de of the Mississippi, 70
w-Orleans, is the mouth

of the Red river, on whose banks and vi-
cinity are the settlements of Rapide, A-
voyelles and Natchitoches, all of them
thriving and populous. The latter is
situate 75 leagues up the Red River. On
the north side of the Red river a few
leagues from its junction with the Missis-
sippi is the Black river, on one of whose
branches, a considerable way up, is the
infant settlement of Ouachita, which from
the richness of the soil may be made a
place of importance. Cotton is the chief
produce of these settlements, but they
have likewise a considerable Indian trade.
The River Rouge, or Red River, is used
to communicate with the frontiers of
New-Mexico.

CONCORD—ARKANSAS—ST. CHARLES,
AND ST. ANDREW, &c.

There is no other settlement on the
Mississippi except the small one called
Concord, opposite to the Natchez, till
you come to the Arkansas river, whose
mouth is 250 leagues above New-Or-
leans.

Here there are but a few families, who
are more attached to the Indian trade (by
which chiefly they live) than to cultiva-
tion. There is no settlement from this-

place to New Madrid, which is itself inconsiderable. Ascending the river you come to Cape Girardeau, St. Genevieve and St. Louis, where, though the inhabitants are numerous, they raise little for exportation, and content themselves with trading with the Indians and working a few lead mines. This country is very fertile, especially on the banks of the Missouri, where there have been formed two settlements, called St. Charles and St. Andrew, mostly by emigrants from Kentucky. The peltry procured in the Illinois is the best sent to the Atlantic market; and the quantity is very considerable. Lead is to be had with ease, and in such quantities as to supply all Europe, if the population were sufficient to work the numerous mines to be found within two or three feet from the surface in various parts of the country. The settlements about the Illinois were first made by the Canadians, and their inhabitants still resemble them in their aversion to labor, and love of a wandering life. They contain but few negroes, compared to the number of the whites; and it may be taken for a general rule, that in proportion to the distance from the capital, the number of blacks diminish below that of the

rid, which is itself in-
ending the river you
ardeau, St. Genevieve
re, though the inhabi-
they raise little for
tent themselves with
dians and working a
This country is very
on the banks of the
ere have been formed
alled St. Charles and
y by emigrants from
eltry procured in the
sent to the Atlantic
quantity is very consid-
be had with ease, and
s to supply all Europe,
vere sufficient to work
es to be found within
from the surface in va-
country. The settle-
inois were first made
and their inhabitants
in their aversion to
vandering life. They
groes, compared to the
ces; and it may be ta-
ale, that in proportion
n the capital, the num-
nith below that of the

whites; the former abounding most on
the rich plantations in its vicinity.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF UPPER
LOUISIANA.

When compared with the Indianater-
ritory, the face of the country in Upper
Louisiana is rather more broken, though
the soil is equally fertile. It is a fact not
to be contested, that the west side of the
river possesses some advantages, not gene-
rally incident to those regions. It is ele-
vated and healthy, and well watered with
a variety of large, rapid streams, calcula-
ted for mills and other water works.
From Cape Girardeau, above the mouth
of the Ohio, to the Missouri, the land on
the east side of the Mississippi is low and
flat, and occasionally exposed to inunda-
tions; that on the Louisiana side, conti-
guous to the river, is generally much high-
er, and in many places very rocky on
the shore. Some of the heights exhibit
a scene truly picturesque. They rise to
a height of at least 300 feet, faced with
perpendicular *lime and free-stone*, carved
into various shapes and figures by the
hand of nature, and afford the appearance
of a multitude of antique towers. From
the tops of these elevations, the land gra-
dually slopes back from the river, with-

out gravel or rock, and is covered with valuable timber. It may be said with truth that, for fertility of soil, no part of the world exceeds the borders of the Mississippi; the land yields an abundance of all the necessaries of life, and almost spontaneously; very little labor being required in the cultivation of the earth. That part of Upper Louisiana, which borders on North Mexico, is one immense prairie; it produces nothing but grass; it is filled with buffalo, deer, and other kinds of game; the land is represented as too rich for the growth of forest trees.

It is pretended that Upper Louisiana contains in its bowels many silver and copper mines, and various specimens of both are exhibited. Several trials have been made to ascertain the fact; but the want of skill in the artists has hitherto left the subject undecided.

The salt works are also pretty numerous: Some belong to individuals; others to the public. They already yield an abundant supply for the consumption of the country; and if properly managed, might become an article of more general exportation. The usual price per bushel is 150 cents in cash at the

, and is covered with
It may be said with
tility of soil, no part of
the borders of the Mis-
yields an abundance of
s of life, and almost
very little labor being
cultivation of the earth.
r Louisiana, which bor-
Mexico, is one immense
ces nothing but grafs;
ffalo, deer, and other
the land is represented
the growth of forest

d that Upper Louisiana
owels many silver and
ad various specimens of
ed. Several trials have
ertain the fact; but the
ne artists has hitherto left
ecided.

s are also pretty nume-
ong to individuals; o-
dic. They already yield
pply for the consump-
try; and if properly man-
ome an article of more
tion. The usual price
150 cents in *cash* at the

works. This price will be still lower
as soon as the manufacture of the salt is
assumed by government or patronised by
men who have large capitals to employ
in the business. One extraordinary fact
relative to salt must not be omitted.
There exists about 1000 miles up the
Missouri, and not far from that river, a
Salt Mountain! The existence of such a
mountain might well be questioned, were
it not for the testimony of several respec-
table and enterprising traders, who have
visited it, and who have exhibited sever-
al bushels of the salt to the curiosity of
the people of St. Louis, where some of
it still remains. A specimen of the same
salt has been sent to Marietta. This
mountain is said to be 180 miles long,
and 45 in width, composed of solid rock
salt, without any trees, or even shrubs
on it. Salt springs are very numerous
beneath the surface of this mountain,
and they flow through the fissures and
cavities of it. Caves of salt-petre are
found in Upper Louisiana, though at
some distance from the settlements. Four
men on a trading voyage, lately discov-
ered one several hundred miles up the
Missouri. They spent 5 or 6 weeks in
the manufacture of this article, and re-

turned to St. Louis with 400 weight of it. It proved to be good and they sold it for a high price.

The geography of the Mississippi and Missouri, and their contiguity for a great length of way, are but little known. The traders assert, that 100 miles above their junction, a man may walk from one to the other in a day; and it is also asserted, that 700 miles still higher up, the portage may be crossed in four or five days. This portage is frequented by traders, who carry on a considerable trade with some of the Missouri Indians—Their general route is through Green Bay, which is an arm of Lake Michigan; they then pass into a small lake connected with it, and which communicates with the Fox river; they then cross over a short portage into the Ouisconsin river, which unites with the Mississippi some distance below the falls of St. Anthony. It is also said, that the traders communicate with the Mississippi above these falls, through Lake Superior—but their trade in that quarter is much less considerable.

CANAL OF CARONDELET.

Behind New-Orleans is a canal about 1½ miles long, which communicates with

(xli)

s with 400 weight of
good and they told it

of the Mississippi and
contiguity for a great
but little known. The
100 miles above their
may walk from one to
; and it is also assert-
s still higher up, the
crossed in four or five
is frequented by tra-
on a considerable trade
the Missouri Indians—
ute is through Green
arm of Lake Michi-
into a small lake
, and which communi-
k river; they then cross
ge into the Ouisconsin-
es with the Mississippi
ow the falls of St. An-
so said, that the tra-
e with the Mississippi a-
rough Lake Superior—
that quarter is much

OF CARONDELET.

Orleans is a canal about
which communicates with

(xlvii)

a creek called the Bayou St. Jean, flow-
ing into Lake Ponchartrain. At the
mouth of it, about 2 leagues from the
city is a small fort called St. Jean, which
commands the entrance from that Lake.
By this creek the communication is kept
up through the lake and the Rigolets to
Mobile and the settlements in West-
Florida. Craft drawing from 6 to 8 feet
water can navigate to the mouth of the
creek, but except in particular swells of
the lake cannot pass the bar without be-
ing lightened.

ST. BERNARDO.

On the East side of the Mississippi, a-
bout five leagues below New-Orleans
and at the head of the English bend is a
settlement known by the name of the
Poblacion de St. Bernardo or the Terre
aux Bocufs, extending on both sides of a
creek or drain, whose head is contiguous
to the Mississippi, and which flowing
eastward, after a course of 18 leagues and
dividing itself into two branches, falls in-
to the sea and lake Borgne. This settle-
ment consists of two parishes, almost all
the inhabitants of which are Spaniards
from the Canaries, who content them-
selves with raising fowls, corn and gar-

(xlviii)

den stuff for the market at New-Orleans. The lands cannot be cultivated to any great distance from the banks of the creek, on account of the vicinity of the marsh behind them, but the place is susceptible of great improvement and of affording another communication to small craft of from 8 to 10 feet draught, between the sea and the Mississippi.

SETTLEMENTS BELOW THE ENGLISH TURN.

At the distance of 16 leagues below New-Orleans, the settlements on both banks of the River are of but small account. Between these and the fort of Plaquemines, the country is overflowed in the spring and in many places incapable of cultivation at any time, being a morass almost impassible by man or beast. This small tongue of land extends considerably into the sea, which is visible on both sides of the Mississippi from a ship's mast.

COUNTRY FROM PLAQUEMINES TO THE SEA AND EFFECT OF THE HURRICANES.

From Plaquemines to the sea is 12 or 13 leagues. The country is low, swampy, chiefly covered with reeds, having little

market at New-Orleans. The land is cultivated to any depth on the banks of the river, but the place is suffering from the want of improvement and of communication to small boats. The depth of the river is 10 feet draught, between the Mississippi.

LOW THE ENGLISH TURN.

At a distance of 16 leagues below the settlements on both sides of the river are of but small account. The fort of English Turn is overflowed in many places incapable of standing at any time, being accessible by man or beast. The land extends considerably, which is visible on the Mississippi from a ship's

PLAQUEMINES TO THE EFFECT OF THE HURRICANES.

The distance to the sea is 12 leagues. The country is low, swampy, and covered with reeds, having little

or no timber and no settlement whatever. It may be necessary to mention here, that the whole lower part of the country from the English Turn downward is subject to overflowing in Hurricanes, either by the recoiling of the river or reflux from the sea on each side; and on more than one occasion it has been covered from the depth of 2 to 10 feet, according to the descent of the river, whereby many lives were lost, horses and cattle swept away and a scene of destruction laid. The last calamity of this kind happened in 1794: but fortunately they are not frequent. In the preceding year the engineer who superintended the erection of the Fort of Plaquemines was drowned in his house near the fort, and the workmen and garrison escaped only by taking refuge on an elevated spot in the fort, on which there were notwithstanding 2 or 3 feet of water. These hurricanes have generally been felt in the month of August. Their greatest fury lasts about 12 hours.—They commence in the south east, veer about to all points of the compass, are felt most severely below and seldom extend more than a few leagues above New-Orleans. In their whole course they are marked with ruin and

Appen.

defolation. Until that of 1793, there had been none felt from the year 1780.

PASSES, OR MOUTHS OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

About 8 leagues below Plaquemines, the Mississippi divides itself into three channels, which are called the passes of the river, viz. the East, South and South West passes. Their course is from 5 to 6 leagues to the sea. The space between is a marsh with little or no timber on it; but from its situation, it may hereafter be rendered of importance. The East-pass, which is on the left hand going down the river, is divided into two branches about two leagues below, viz. the Pass à la Loutre, and that known to mariners by the name of the Balize, at which there is a small block house and some huts of the pilots, who reside only here. The first of these secondary channels contains at present but 8 feet water; the latter from 14 to 16 according to the seasons. The South-pass, which is directly in front of the Mississippi, has always been considered as entirely choaked up, but has 10 feet water. The South West pass, which is on the right, is the longest and narrowest of all the passes, and a few years ago had 13 feet water, and was that by

that of 1793, there
t from the year 1780.

IS OF THE MISSISSIPPI-
s below Plaquemines,
ides itself into three
re called the passes of
East, South and South
eir course is from 5 to
ea. The space between
ttle or no timber on it;
ion, it may hereafter be
stance. The East-pass,
left hand going down
ed into two branches a-
below, viz. the Pass
that known to mariners
e Balize, at which there
ouse and some huts of
side only here. The first
ry channels contains at
et water; the latter from
ng to the seasons. The
h is directly in front of
as always been consider-
eaked up, but has 10
South West pass, which
s the longest and nar-
passes, and a few years
water, and was that by

which the large ships entered and sailed
from the Mississippi. It has now but 8
feet water, and will probably remain so
for some time. In speaking of the quan-
tity of water in the passes, it must be un-
derstood of what is on the bar of each
pass; for immediately after passing the
bar, which is very narrow, there are
from 5 to 7 fathom at all seasons.

COUNTRY EAST OF LAKE PONCHAR-
TRAIN.

The country on the east side of Lake
Ponchartrain to Mobile, and including
the whole extent between the American
line, the Mississippi above New-Orleans,
and the lakes (with the exception of a
tract of about 30 miles on the Mississippi,
and as much square, contiguous to the
line, and comprehending the waters of
Thompson's Creek, Bayou Sara and the
Amet) is a poor, thin soil, overgrown with
pine, and contains no good land what-
ever, unless on the banks of a few small
rivers. It would however afford abund-
ant supplies of pitch, tar and pine lum-
ber, and would feed large herds of cat-
tle.

THE INHABITANTS AND THEIR ORIGIN.

The inhabitants of Louisiana are chiefly the descendants of the French and Canadians. There are a considerable number of English and Americans in New-Orleans. The two German coasts are peopled by the descendants of settlers from Germany, and a few French mixed with them. The three succeeding settlements up to Baton Rouge contain mostly Acadians, banished from Nova-Scotia by the English, and their descendants. The government of Baton Rouge, especially the east side, which includes all the country between the Iberville and the American line, is composed partly of Acadians, a very few French, and of a great majority of Americans. On the west side they are mostly Acadians: at Pointe Coupée and Faussée river they are French and Acadians—Of the population of the Atacapas and Opelousas, a considerable part is American—Natchitoches, on the Red river, contains but a few Americans, and the remainder of the inhabitants are French—But the former are more numerous in other settlements on that river, viz. Avoyelles, Rapide, and Ouacheta. At Arkansas they

S AND THEIR ORIGIN.

of Louisiana are chiefly of the French and are a considerable number and Americans in the two German coasts the descendants of settlers and a few French mixed. The three succeeding Baton Rouge contain banished from Nova-Scotia, and their descendants of Baton Rouge, the side, which includes between the Iberville and the river, is composed partly of French, and of a few Americans. On the west side are mostly Acadians: at the mouth of the Atchafalaya and False river they are Acadians—Of the population of the Opelousas and Attakapas, a small part is American—Natchez, the Red river, contains but few French, and the remainder of the population are French—But the former are numerous in other settlements, viz. Avoyelles, Rayne, and others. At Arkansas they

are mostly French; and at New Madrid, Americans. At least 2-5ths, if not a greater proportion of all settlers on the Spanish side of the Mississippi, in the Illinois country, are likewise supposed to be Americans. Below New-Orleans the population is altogether French, and the descendants of Frenchmen.

NEW-ORLEANS.

By recurring to the maps and examining the position of Louisiana, it will appear, that the lower part projects into the sea. It has in all probability been formed by the sediment brought down by the current and deposited on the flat coast. There is therefore on the east side but a very narrow slip along the bank of the river, from the sea to the Iberville. The land is not generally susceptible of cultivation more than a mile in depth from the river, the rest is low and swampy to the lakes and the sea, but in general abounds with cypress timber, which is sawed by mills, which are worked by artificial streams from the Mississippi, in the time of freshes. They generally run five months in the year.

What has been said of the east equally applies to the west side of the river. The

(liv)

soil and situation are nearly the same. After leaving the bank of the river, there is an immense swamp, intersected by creeks and lakes, extending to the high lands of Atacapas, and occupying a space of thirty or forty leagues.

The city of New-Orleans, which is regularly laid out on the east side of the Mississippi, in lat. 30, N. and long 90, W. extends nearly a mile along the river, from the gate of France on the south, to that of Chapitoulas above, and a little more than 1.3 of a mile in breadth, from the river to the rampart ; but it has an extensive suburb on the upper side. The houses in front of the town and for a square or two backwards, are mostly of brick, covered with slate or tile, and many of two stories. The remainder are of wood, covered with shingles. The streets cross each other at right angles, and are 52 French feet wide. The squares between the intersections of the streets have a front of 300 French feet. There is in the middle of the front of the city a *place d'armes*, facing which the church and town-house are built. There are from 12 to 1400 houses in the city and suburbs. The population may be estimated at 10,000, including the seamen and

div)

are nearly the same. Bank of the river, there wamp, intersected by extending to the high and occupying a space leagues.

New-Orleans, which is re- the east side of the 30, N. and long 90, a mile along the ri- te of France on the Chapitoulas above, and .3 of a mile in breadth, the rampart ; but it has rb on the upper side. t of the town and for a wards, are mostly of h slate or tile, and ma-

The remainder are of h shingles. The streets t right angles, and are ide. The squares be- ctions of the streets 0-French feet. There of the front of the city eing which the church are built. There are 0 houses in the city and pulation may be estima- cluding the seamen and

(Iv)

garrison. It was fortified in 1793, but the works were originally defective, could not have been defended, and are now in ruins. The powder magazine is on the opposite bank of the river.

The public buildings and other public property in New-Orleans, are as follows :

Two very extensive brick stores, from 160 to 180 feet in length, and about 30 in breadth. They are one story high and covered with shingles.

A government house, stables and garden, occupying a front of about 220 feet on the river, in the middle of the town, and extending 336 feet back to the next street.

A military hospital.

An ill built custom house of wood, almost in ruins, in the upper part of the city, near the river.

An extensive barrack in the lower part of the city, fronting on the river, and calculated to lodge 12 or 1400 men.

A large lot adjoining the king's stores, with a few sheds in it. It serves as a park for artillery.

A prison, town-house, market house, assembly room, some ground rents, and the common about the town.

(17)

A public school for the rudiments of the Spanish language.

A Cathedral church unfinished, and some houses belonging to it.

A charitable hospital, with some houses belonging to it, and a revenue of 1500 dollars annually, endowed by an individual lately deceased.

The canal de Carondelet has been already described.

NUMBER OF INHABITANTS.

According to the annexed census, No. 2, of Louisiana, including Pensacola and the Natchez, as made in 1785, the whole number of inhabitants amounted to 32,062, of which 14,215 were free whites, 1,303 free people of color, and 16,544 slaves.

The statement, No. 3, from the latest documents, makes the whole number 42,375 the free whites, 21,244 the free people of color, 1,768—and the slaves, 12,920.

A particular statement respecting the population, &c. of Upper Louisiana, and another containing the census of New-Orleans, in this year, are numbered 4 and 5, in the appendix.

These papers certainly exhibit a smaller number than the real population of the country. From an official document,

for the rudiments of
 age.
 church unfinished, and
 ing to it.
 pital, with some hou-
 and a revenue of 1500
 dowed by an individu-
 arondelet has been ab-

OF INHABITANTS.

e annexed census, No.
 cluding Pensacola and
 ade in 1785, the whole
 nts amounted to 32,062,
 were free whites, 1,303
 or, and 16,544 slaves.

No. 3, from the latest
 es the whole number
 whites, 21,244 the
 color, 1,768—and the

atement respecting the
 of Upper Louisiana, and
 g the census of New-
 ear, are numbered 4 and
 ix.

certainly exhibit a small-
 the real population of the
 an official document,

made in July last, and received from
 Atacapas since the statement, No. 3, was
 formed, it appears that it contained 2,270
 whites, 210 free people of color, 1,266
 slaves, in all 3,746 souls, instead of 1,447,
 as therein stated. It is highly probable
 that the return for the neighbouring
 district of Opelousas, is in the same pro-
 portion underrated.

A conjectural estimation made by a
 gentleman of great respectability and
 correct information, residing at Natchez,
 raises the number of whites in the Island
 of New Orleans, on the west side of the
 river, and some settlements on the east
 side, to 50,150, and the number of blacks
 to 39,820. His statement is also sub-
 joined, No. 6.

It is at all times difficult to obtain the
 full census of a country, and the impedi-
 ments are increased in this from its scat-
 tered population. The actual enumera-
 tion may therefore fall short of the true
 numbers.

(viii)

MILITIA.

There is a militia in Louisiana. The following is the return of it, made to the Court of Spain by the Baron Carondelet. From Balize to the city—volun- *Militia.* teers of the Mississippi—4 companies of 100 men each—complete, 400

City—Batallicn of the city 5 companies, 500

Artillery company, with supernumeraries, 120

Carabineers, or privileged companies of horse, 2 companies of 70 each—incomplete, 100

Mulattoes 2 companies, 300 negroes 1 do.

Mixed legion of the Mississippi, comprehending Galveztown, Baton-Rouge, Pointe Coupee, Atacapas and Opelousas, viz.

2 companies of grenadiers,

8 do. of fusileers,

4 do. of dragoons,

2 do. lately added from Bayou Sara,

16 companies of 100 men each, 1600

Avoyelles, 1 company of infantry, 100

lviii)

LITIA.

ia in Louisiana. The
turn of it, made to the
the Baron Carondelet.

city—volun- *Militia*.
Mississippi—4 compa-
en each—com-

400

the city 5 com-

500

pany, with fu-
eraries,

120

or privileged
of horse, 2
of 70 each—

100

companies,

300

do.

of the Mississippi, com-
Baton-Rouge,

atapas and Opelousas,

grenadiers,

fileers,

agoons,

added from Bayou Sara,

100 men each, 1600

pany of infantry, 100

(lix)

Ouacheta, 1 do. of cavalry, 100

Natchitoches, 1 do. of infantry
and 1 of cavalry, 200

Arkansas, 1 do. of infantry and
cavalry, 100

Illinois, 4 do. of cavalry, } These are
4 do. of infantry, } always a-
above the
compliment, 800

Provincial regiment of Germans
and Acadians, from the 1st
German coast to Iberville,

10 companies, viz. 2 of
grenadiers, 8 of fusileers, } 1000

Mobile and the country East of
Lake Ponchartrain,

2 Companies of horse and foot,
incomplete, 120

5,440

The same gentleman alluded to, page
18, makes the number of militia to amount
to 10,340 men within the same limits to
which his estimate of the population ap-
plies. He distributes them in the sever-
al settlements, as follows:

1. The island of New-Orleans,
with the opposite margin and the
adjacent settlements, 5000

2. The west margin from Man-
chac, including Pointe Coupee,

(12)

and extending to the Red River,	800
3. Atacapas, along the coast, between the Delta of the Mississippi and the River Sabine,	350
4. Opelousas,	750
5. Red River, including Bayou Boeuf, Avoyelles, Rapide, and Natchitoches,	1,000
6. Ouachita,	300
7. Concord,	40
8. Arkansas,	150
9. New Madrid and its vicinity,	350
10. Illinois and Missouri,	1,000
11. The settlements on the East side of the Mississippi, from the American line to the Iberville, and some other settlements.	600
	10,840

It is to be observed, that none of these statements include the country beyond the River Sabine, nor even all those which lie eastwardly of it. Data are also wanting to give them.

FORTIFICATIONS.

St. Louis has a lieutenant colonel to command in it, and but few troops. Baton Rouge is an ill constructed fort, and

(lx)

the Red River, 800
 along the coast,
 of the Miss- 350
 er Sabine, 750
 including Bayou
 , Rapide, and 1,000
 300
 40
 150
 id and its vicini- 350
 d Missouri, 1,000
 ments on the East
 ssippi, from the
 o the Iberville,
 settlements. 600

10,840

served, that none of these
 ide the country beyond
 ine, nor even all those
 ardly of it. Data are also
 them.

FORTIFICATIONS.

a lieutenant colonel to
 and but few troops. Ba-
 n ill constructed fort, and

(lxi)

has about 50 men. In describing the
 Canal of Carondelet, the small fort of St.
 Jean has been mentioned, as has the block
 house at the Balize in its proper place.
 The fortifications of New Orleans, notic-
 ed before, consists of five ill constructed
 redoubts, with a covered way, palisade
 and ditch. The whole is going fast to
 decay, and it is supposed they would be
 of but little service, in case of an attack.
 Though the powder magazine is on the
 opposite side of the river, there is no suf-
 ficient provision made for its removal to
 the city, in case of need.

The fort of Plaquemines, which is a-
 bout twelve or thirteen leagues from the
 sea, is an ill constructed, irregular brick
 work, on the eastern side of the Mississip-
 pi, with a ditch in front of the river,
 and protected on the lower side by a deep
 creek, flowing from the river to the sea.
 It is, however, imperfectly closed behind,
 and almost without defence there; too
 much reliance having been placed on the
 swampiness of the ground, which hard-
 ens daily. It might be taken, perhaps,
 by escalade, without difficulty. It is in a
 degree ruinous. The principal front is
 meant to defend the approach from the
 sea, and can oppose, at most, but eight

Appen.

6

heavy guns. It is built at a turn in the river, where ships in general must anchor, as the wind which brings them up so far is contrary in the next reach which they mostly work through ; and they would therefore be exposed to the fire of the fort. On the opposite bank are the ruins of a small closed redoubt, called Fort Bourbon, usually garrisoned by a serjeant's command. Its fire was intended to flank that of the Fort of Plaquemines, and prevent shipping and craft from ascending or descending on that side. When a vessel appears, a signal is made on one side, and answered on the other. Should she attempt to pass, without sending a boat on shore, she would be immediately fired upon.

INDIANS.

The Indian nations within the limits of Louisiana, are, as far as known, as follows, and consist of the numbers hereafter specified.

On the Eastern bank of the Mississippi about 25 leagues above Orleans the remains of the nation of Houmas or Red Men which do not exceed 60 persons. There are no other Indians settled on this side of the river either in Louisiana or West Florida, though they are at times

frequented by parties of wandering Choctaws.

On the West side of the Mississippi are the remains of the Tounicas settled near, and above Pointe Coupee on the river consisting of fifty or sixty persons.

IN THE ATACAPAS,

On the lower parts of the Bayou Teche at about eleven or twelve leagues, from the sea are two villages of Chitimachas consisting of about one hundred souls.

The Atacapas, properly so called, dispersed throughout the district, and chiefly on the Bayou or creek of Vermillion, about one hundred souls.

Wanderers of the tribes of Bilexis and Choctaws on Bayou Crocodile, which empties into the Teche, about fifty souls.

In the OPELOUSAS to the N. W. of ATACAPAS,

Two villages of Alibamas in the centre of the district near the church, consisting of one hundred persons.

Conchates dispersed through the country as far West as the river Sabinas and its neighbourhood, about three hundred and fifty persons.

ON THE RIVER ROUGE,

At Avoyelles, nineteen leagues from the Mississippi, is a large village of the Biloni nation, and another on the lake of the Avoyelles, the whole about sixty souls.

At the Rapide twenty-six leagues from the Mississippi is a village of Choctaws of one hundred souls, and another of Biloxes, about two leagues from it, of about one hundred more : About eight or nine leagues higher up the Red River is a village of about fifty souls. All these are occasionally employed by the settlers in their neighbourhood as boatmen.

About eighty leagues on Natchitoches on the Red River is the nation of the Cadoquies, called by abbreviation Cados; they can raise from three to four hundred warriors, are the friends of the whites and are esteemed the bravest and most generous of all the nations in this vast country; they are rapidly decreasing, owing to intemperance and the numbers annually destroyed by the Osages and Choctaws.

There are besides the foregoing, at least four or five hundred families of Choctaws, who are dispersed on the West side of the Mississippi, on the Ouacheta and

VER ROUGE,
 fifteen leagues from
 a large village of the
 another on the lake
 the whole about sixty

twenty-six leagues from
 village of Choctaws
 ls, and another of Bi-
 leagues from it, of a
 more: About eight or
 up the Red River is
 fifty souls. All these
 employed by the settlers
 as boatmen.

gives on Natchitoches
 is the nation of the
 abbreviation Cados;
 three to four hundred
 friends of the whites
 the bravest and most
 nations in this vast
 rapidly decreasing,
 and the num-
 bered by the Osages

es the foregoing, at
 red families of Choc-
 sed on the West side
 the Ouacheta and

Red Rivers, as far West as Natchitoches
 and the whole nation would have emi-
 grated across the Mississippi had it not
 been for the opposition of the Spaniards
 and the Indians on that side who had
 suffered for their aggressions.

ON THE RIVER ARKANSAS, &c.

Between the Red River and the Ark-
 anzas there are but a few Indians, the re-
 mains of tribes almost extinct. On this
 last river is the nation of the same name,
 consisting of about two hundred and six-
 ty warriors, they are brave yet peaceable
 and well disposed, and have always been
 attached to the French and espoused their
 cause in their wars with the Chickasaws,
 whom they have always resisted with suc-
 cess. They live in three villages; the first
 is at eighteen leagues from the Mississip-
 pi on the Arkansas river, and the others
 are at three and six leagues from the first.
 A scarcity of game on the Eastern side
 of the Mississippi has lately induced a num-
 ber of Cherokees, Choctaws, Chickasaws,
 &c. to frequent the neighbourhood of Ar-
 kanfas, where game is still in abundance:
 they have contracted marriages with the
 Arkansas, and seem inclined to make a
 permanent settlement and incorporate

themselves with that nation. The number is unknown, but is considerable and is every day increasing.

On the river St. Francis, in the neighbourhood of New-Madrid, Cape Girardeau, Riviere a la Pomme, and the environs, are settled a number of vagabonds, emigrants from the Delawares, Shawnee, Miamis, Chickasaws, Cherokees, Piorias, and supposed to consist in all of five hundred families; they are at times troublesome to the boats descending the river, and have even plundered some of them and committed a few murders. They are attached to liquor, seldom remain long in any place, many of them speak English, all understand it, and there are some who even read and write it.

At St. Genevieve in the settlements among the whites are about thirty Piorias, Kaskaskias, and Illinois, who seldom hunt for fear of the other Indians; they are the remains of a nation which fifty years ago could bring into the field one thousand two hundred warriors.

ON THE MISSOURI.

On the Missouri and its waters are many and numerous nations, the best known of which are: The Osages, situate on the

nation. The number is considerable and increasing.

Francis, in the neighbourhood of Cape Girardeau, and the neighbourhood of vagabonds, Delawares, Shawnees, Cherokees, Piorias, consist in all of five hundred and are at times troublesome descending the river, murdered some of them in murders. They are, seldom remain long of them speak English, and there are some who speak it.

in the settlements are about thirty Piorias, who seldom hunt other Indians; they are a nation which fifty years ago the field one thousand warriors.

THE MISSOURI.

and its waters are many nations, the best known the Osages, situate on the

river of same name on the right bank of the Missouri at about eighty leagues from its confluence with it: they consist of one thousand warriors, who live in two settlements at no great distance from each other. They are of a gigantic stature and well proportioned, are enemies of the whites and of all other Indian nations, and commit depredations from the Illinois to the Arkansas. The trade of this nation is said to be under an exclusive grant. They are a cruel and ferocious race, and are hated and feared by all the other Indians. The confluence of the Osage river with the Missouri is about eighty leagues from the Mississippi.

Sixty leagues higher up the Missouri, and on the same bank, is the river Kansas, and on it the nation of the same name, but at about seventy or eighty leagues from its mouth. It consists of about two hundred and fifty warriors, who are as fierce and as cruel as the Osages, and often molest and ill-treat those who go to trade with them.

Sixty leagues above the river Kansas, and at about two hundred from the mouth of the Missouri, still on the right bank, is the *Riviere Platte*, or Shallow River, remarkable for its quick-sands and bad

navigation; and near its confluence with the Missouri dwells the nation of Otolaetos, commonly called Otos, consisting of about two hundred warriors, among whom are twenty-five or thirty of the nation of Missouri, who took refuge among them about twenty-five years since.

Forty leagues up the *River Platte* you come to the nation of the Panis, composed of about seven hundred warriors in four neighbouring villages; they hunt but little, and are ill provided with fire-arms: they often make war on the Spaniards in the neighbourhood of Santa Fe, from which they are not far distant.

At three hundred leagues from the Mississippi and one hundred from the *River Platte* on the same bank are situated the villages of the Mahas. They consisted in 1799 of five hundred warriors, but are said to have been almost cut off last year by the small pox.

At fifty leagues above the Mahas and on the left bank of the Missouri dwell the Poncas, to the number of two hundred and fifty warriors, possessing in common with the Mahas their language, ferocity, and vices. Their trade has never been of much value, and those engaged in it are exposed to pillage and ill-treatment.

near its confluence with the nation of Ojibwa, called Oros, consisting of warriors, among five or thirty of the nation took refuge among five years since.

to the *River Platte* you of the Panis, composed of hundred warriors in villages; they hunt and are provided with fire-arms. They make war on the Spaniards in the neighbourhood of Santa Fe, and are not far distant.

At a distance of four leagues from the mouth of the Missouri, and a hundred from the *River*, are situated the Mahas. They consist of hundred warriors, but were almost cut off last year by the small-pox.

Above the Mahas and on the Missouri dwell the Mandanians, a number of two hundred warriors, possessing in common their language, ferocity, and trade has never been interrupted. Those engaged in it are not ill-treated.

At the distance of 450 leagues from the mouth of the Missouri, and on the right bank of the Missouri, dwell the Aricaras, to the number of 700 warriors, and 60 leagues above them, the Mandan nation consisting of about 700 warriors likewise. These two last nations are well disposed to the whites, but have been the victims of the Sioux, or Mandowessies, who being themselves well provided with fire-arms, have taken advantage of the defenceless situation of the others, and have on all occasions murdered them without mercy.

No discoveries on the Missouri, beyond the Mandan nation, have been accurately detailed, though the traders have been informed, that many large navigable rivers discharge their waters into it, and that there are many numerous nations settled on them.

The Sioux, or Mandowessies, who frequent the country between the north bank of the Missouri and the Mississippi, are a great impediment to trade and navigation. They endeavour to prevent all communication with the nations dwelling high up the Missouri, to deprive them of ammunition and arms, and thus keep them subservient to themselves. In the winter they are chiefly on the banks of

the Missouri and massacre all who fall into their hands.

There are a number of nations a distance from the banks of the Missouri, to the north and south, concerning whom but little information has been received. Returning to the Mississippi and ascending it from the Missouri, about 75 leagues above the mouth of the latter, the River Moingona or Riviere de Moine enters the Mississippi on the west side, and on it are situated the Ayoas, a nation originally from the Missouri, speaking the language of the Otatachas : it consisted of 200 warriors, before the small pox lately raged among them.

The Sacs and Renards dwell on the Mississippi, about 300 leagues above St. Louis, and frequently trade with it—they live together, and consisted of 500 warriors—their chief trade is with Michilimackinac, and they have always been peaceable and friendly.

The other nations on the Mississippi higher up, are but little known to us. The nations of the Missouri, though cruel, treacherous, and intolent, may doubtless be kept in order by the United States, if proper regulations are adopted with respect to them.

number of nations a dis-
like of the Missouri, to
with, concerning whom
information has been received.

Mississippi and ascends
the latter, the River
enters the west side, and on it are
the Osage, a nation originally
speaking the language
of the small pox lately ra-

Renards dwell on the
ut 300 leagues above St.
requently trade with it—
er, and consisted of 500
chief trade is with Mich-
d they have always been
friendly.

friendly.
nations on the Mississippi
but little known to us. The
Missouri, though cruel,
and intolent, may doubtless
er by the United States, if
ions are adopted with ref-

OF LANDS AND TITLES.

The lands archeld in some instances by grants from the Crown, but mostly from the Colonial government. Perhaps not one quarter part of the lands granted in Louisiana are held by complete titles; and of the remainder a considerable part depends upon a written permission of a Commandant. Not a small proportion is held by occupancy with a simple verbal permission of the officer last mentioned. This practice has always been countenanced by the Spanish government, in order that poor men, when they found themselves a little at ease, might at their own convenience apply for and obtain complete titles. In the mean time such imperfect rights were suffered by government to descend by inheritance, and even to be transferred by private contract. When requisite they have been seized by judi-

cial authority and sold for the payment of debts.

Until within a few years, the governor of Upper Louisiana was authorised to make surveys of any extent. In the exercise of this discretionary power, some abuses were committed; a few small monopolies were created. About three years ago, he was restricted in this breach of his duty; since which he has been only authorised to make surveys to emigrants in the following manner: Two hundred acres for each man and wife, fifty acres for each child, and twenty acres for each slave. Hence the quantity of land allowed to settlers depended on the number in each family; and for this quantity of land they paid no more than the expence of survey. These surveys were necessary to entitle the settlers to grants; and the governor, and after him the Intendant of New-Orleans, was alone authorised to execute grants on the receipt of the surveys from the settlers.

The administration of the land-office is at present under the care of the Intendant of the province.

There are no feudal rights nor noblesse.

the Intendant of New-Orleans, was alone authorized to execute grants on the receipt of the surveys from the settlers.

The administration of the land-office is at present under the care of the Intendant of the province.

There are no feudal rights nor noblesse.

It is impossible to ascertain the quantity of lands granted, without calling on the claimants to exhibit their titles; the registry being incomplete and the maps made by the different surveyors general having been burnt in the fires at New-Orleans of 1788 and 1794. No estimate has been obtained.

All the lands on both sides of the Mississippi, from the distance of sixteen leagues below New-Orleans to Baton Rouge, are granted to the depth of forty acres, or near half a league, which is the usual depth of all grants. Some have double and triple grants,—that is to say, they have twice or thrice forty acres in depth; and others have grants extending from the Mississippi to the sea or the lakes behind them. In other parts of the country the people, being generally settled on the banks of creeks or rivers, have a front of from six to forty acres

Appen.

and the grant almost invariably expresses a depth of forty acres. All the lands ungranted in the island of New-Orleans or on the opposite bank of the Mississippi, are sunken, inundated, and at present unfit for cultivation; but may, in part, be reclaimed at a future day by efforts of the rich and enterprizing.

CULTIVATION OF SUGAR.

The sugar-cane may be cultivated between the river Iberville and the city, on both sides of the river and as far back as the swamps. Below the city, however, the lands decline so rapidly that beyond fifteen miles the soil is not well adapted to it. Above the Iberville the cane would be affected by the cold, and its produce would therefore be uncertain. Within these limits the best planters admit that one quarter of the cultivated lands of any considerable plantation may be planted in cane, one quarter left in pasture, and the remaining half employed for provisions, &c. and a reserve for a change of crops. One Parisian Arpent of one hundred and eighty feet square may be expected to produce on an average twelve hundred weight of sugar, and fifty gallons of rum.

it invariably expresses. All the lands un-
of New-Orleans or
k of the Mississippi,
ated, and at present
; but may, in part,
ture day by efforts of
rizing.

ON OF SUGAR.

may be cultivated be-
ryville and the city, on
ver and as far back as
w the city, however,
o rapidly that beyond
il is not well adapted
erville the cane would
cold, and its produce
e uncertain. Within
st planters admit that
cultivated lands of any
ation may be planted
er left in pasture, and
employed for provi-
reserve for a change
arifian Arpent of one
y feet square may be
ce on an average twelve
f sugar, and fifty gallons

From the above data, admitting that
both sides of the river are planted for
ninety miles in extent and about three-
fourths of a mile in depth, it will result
that the annual product may amount in
round numbers to twenty-five thousand
hogheads of sugar, with twelve thousand
puncheons of rum. Enterprising young
planters say that one-third, or even one-
half of the arable land might be planted
in cane. It may also be remarked that a
regular supply of provisions from above
at a moderate price, would enable the
planter to give his attention to a greater
body of land cultivated with cane. The
whole of these lands, as may be supposed,
are granted ; but in the Atacapas coun-
try, there is undoubtedly a portion, pa-
rallel to the sea coast, fit for the culture of
sugar-cane. There vacant lands are to
be found, but the proportion is at present
unknown.

In the above remarks the lands at Terre
aux bœuf, on the Fourche, Bayou St. Jean
and other inlets of the Mississippi, south
of the latitude supposed to divide those
which are fit, from those which are unfit,
for the cultivation of the cane, have been
entirely kept out of view. Including these
and taking one-third instead of one-fourth

of the lands fit for sugar, the produce of the whole would be fifty thousand instead of twenty-five thousand hogheads of sugar.

The following quantities of sugar, brown, clayed and refined, have been imported into the United States from Louisiana and the Floridas, viz.

In 1799	-	773,542 lb.
1800	-	1,560,865
1801	-	967,619
1802	-	1,576,933

OF THE LAWS.

When the country was first ceded to Spain, she preserved many of the French regulations, but by almost imperceptible degrees they have disappeared, and at present the province is governed entirely by the laws of Spain and the ordinances formed expressly for the colony. Various ordinances promulgated by general O'Reilly, its first governor under Spain, as well as some other laws, are translated and annexed in the appendix No. 1.

COURTS OF JUSTICE.

The governor's court has a civil and military jurisdiction throughout the province. That of the lieutenant governor has the same extent in civil cases only.

of sugar, the produce of
be fifty thousand in-
e thousand hogheads of
quantities of sugar,
refined, have been im-
ited States from Lou-
rida, viz.

- 773,542 lb.
- 1,560,885
- 967,619
- 1,576,933

THE LAWS.

country was first ceded to
ved many of the French
y almost imperceptible
disappeared, and at pre-
is governed entirely by
and the ordinances for-
the colony. Various or-
gated by general O'Reil-
rnor under Spain, as well
ws, are translated and an-
endix No. 1.
rs of JUSTICE.

's court has a civil and
cion throughout the pro-
the lieutenant governor
ent in civil cases only.

There are two Alcaldes, whose jurif-
diction, civil and criminal, extends through
the city of New-Orleans and five leagues
around it, where the parties have *no fuero*
militar or military privilege; those who
have can transfer their causes to the go-
vernor.

The tribunal of the Intendant has cog-
nizance of admiralty and fiscal causes, and
such suits as are brought for the recovery
of money in the king's name or against
him.

The tribunal of the Alcalde Provincial
has cognizance of criminal causes, where
offences are committed in the country,
or when the criminal takes refuge there,
and in other specified cases.

The ecclesiastical tribunal has jurif-
diction in all matters respecting the
church.

The governor, lieutenant governor, Al-
caldes, Intendant, Provincial Alcalde, and
the Provisor in ecclesiastical causes, are
respectively sole judges. All sentences
affecting the life of the culprit, except
those of the Alcalde Provincial, must be
ratified by the superior tribunal, or cap-
tain general, according to the nature of
the case, before they are carried into ex-
ecution. The governor has not the pow-

er of pardoning criminals. An auditor and an assessor, who are doctors of law, are appointed to give counsel to those judges; but for some time past there has been no assessor. If the judges do not consult those officers or do not follow their opinions, they make themselves responsible for their decisions.

The commandants of districts have also a species of judicial powers. They hear and determine all pecuniary causes not exceeding the value of one hundred dollars. When the suit is for a larger sum, they commence the process, collect the proofs and remit the whole to the governor, to be decided by the proper tribunal. They can inflict no corporal punishment except upon slaves; but they have the power of arresting and imprisoning when they think it necessary; advice of which and their reasons must be transmitted to the governor.

Small suits are determined in a summary way by hearing both parties *visa voce*; but in suits of greater magnitude the proceedings are carried on by petition and reply, replication and rejoinder, reiterated until the auditor thinks they have nothing new to say. Then all the proofs either party chuses to adduce are taken

minally. An auditor are doctors of law, and counsel to those judges. At the time past there has been of the judges do not or do not follow make themselves redecisions. The auditors of districts have all judicial powers. They hear all pecuniary causes of value of one hundred or more. If the suit is for a larger value the process, collect the whole to the governor, and by the proper trial inflict no corporal punishment on slaves; but they have the right of flogging and imprisoning if necessary; advice of counsel must be transcribed. The sentence is determined in a summary manner by both parties *viva voce* ; the greater magnitude the proceeding is, the more is petition and rejoinder, reiteration. The auditor thinks they have done their duty. Then all the proofs to adduce are taken

before the keeper of the records of the court, who is always a notary public.

The parties have now an opportunity of making their remarks upon the evidence by way of petition, and of bringing forward opposing proofs. When the auditor considers the cause as mature, he issues his decree, which receives its binding force from the governor's signature, where the cause depends before him.

There is an appeal to Havana, if applied for within five days after the date of the decree, in causes above a certain value. An ulterior appeal lies to the Audience which formerly sat at St. Domingo, but which is now removed to some part of Cuba, and from thence to the council of the Indies in Spain.

Suits are of various durations. In pecuniary matters the laws encourage summary proceedings. An execution may be had on a bond in four days, and in the same space on a note of hand after the party acknowledges it, or after his signature is proved. Moveable property is sold after giving nine days warning, provided it be three times publicly cried in that interval. Landed property must be likewise cried three times, with an interval of nine days between each, and it may

then be sold. All property taken in execution must be appraised and sold for at least half the appraisement. In pecuniary matters the governors decide verbally without appeal, when the sum does not exceed one hundred dollars. The Alcaldes have the same privilege when the amount is not above twenty dollars.

In addition to these courts four years ago there were established four Alcaldes de Barrio, or petty magistrates, one for each of the four quarters of the city, with a view to improve its police. They hear and decide all demands not exceeding ten dollars, exercise the power of committing to prison, and in case of robbery, riot, or assassination, they can, by calling on a notary, take cognizance of the affair; but when this is done they are bound to remit the proceedings to some of the other judges, and in all cases whatever, to give them information when they have committed any person to prison.

Most of the suits are on personal contracts, rights to dower, inheritances, and titles to land. Those arising from personal quarrels are generally decided in a summary way. The inhabitants are said not to be litigious.

property taken in ex-
appraised and sold for at
hishment. In pecunia-
rners decide verbally
when the sum does not
ed dollars. The Alcal-
privilege when the a-
e twenty dollars.

these courts four years
ablished four Alcaldes
y magistrates, one for
quarters of the city, with
its police. They hear
hands not exceeding ten
ne power of committing
ase of robbery, riot, or
can, by calling on a
izance of the affair, but
e they are bound to re-
gs to some of the other.
cases whatever, to give
when they have com-
to prison.

its are on personal con-
ower, inheritances, and
hose arising from per-
generally decided in a
he inhabitants are said
s.

LAWYERS AND COSTS OF THE COURTS AND
THEIR OFFICERS.

The number of lawyers is small, not
exceeding three or four attorneys. Their
fees are small. Suits are carried on in
writings called *escritos*, which may be
drawn up by the parties themselves, if they
please, but they must be presented by the
escribano or notary who is the keeper of
the records of the court.

The fees of the judges are twenty-five
cents for every half signature or flourish
(which is usually affixed on common oc-
casions,) fifty cents for every whole signa-
ture, and two dollars and three-fourths
for every attendance, as at a sale or the
taking of evidence.

The fees of the *Aboado*, or person
consulted by the judge on law points,
are twelve and a half cents for every leaf
of which the process consists, and four
dollars for every point of law cited. Those
of the attorney, when employed, are six-
ty two and a half cents for a simple peti-
tion or *escrito*, but if it should be neces-
sary to read a process in order to form
his petition, and it should require much
time and labour, he is compensated in
proportion, besides twelve and a half cents
per leaf for perusing the papers. For at-

tendance on any business he is allowed one dollar and fifty cents for the *Assistance* of two and a half hours. The notary has fifty cents for each decree or order of the judge, twenty-five cents for a notification in his office, and fifty cents for one out of it, but within the city; one dollar and seven eighths for every attendance of two and a half hours on business, and twenty-five cents additional for every leaf of paper written by him.

A counsellor or two have sometimes resided at New-Orleans, but, being generally found obnoxious to the officers of the government, they have not continued there. The counsellor values his own services and in general exacts large sums. The attorney generally receives from the party who employs him more than is allowed by law.

CRIMES, CRIMINAL JURISPRUDENCE AND PUNISHMENTS.

In cases of petty crimes the cognizance of the proper court may be said to be final and without appeal; and most commonly such cases are decided in a summary way. With respect to crimes of deeper dye more solemnity is used. A person skilled in the laws is always nominated by the court to defend the accu-

business he is allowed
cents for the *Asses-*
half hours. The nota-
or each decree or or-
twenty-five cents for
office; and fifty cents
ut within the city; one
ghths for every atten-
half hours on busi-
ve cents additional for
written by him.

two have sometimes
leans, but, being ge-
xious to the officers of
they have not continu-
unfellow values his own
eral exacts large sums.
rally receives from the
s him more than is al-

JURISPRUDENCE AND PUNISHMENTS.

crimes the cognizance
t may be said to be fi-
apeal; and most com-
re decided in a sum-
respect to crimes of
solemnity is used. A
ne laws is always no-
urt to defend the accu-

fed. The trial is not public ; but exam-
inations and depositions in writing are
taken privately by the auditor at any time
most convenient to himself, at which never-
theless the counsel of the accused is ad-
mitted to be present. He has also every
kind of privilege granted to him in mak-
ing his defence. Such suits are general-
ly very tedious and expensive, when he
is wealthy. The condemned is entitled
to an appeal as in civil cases, provided
he gives security for the payment of the
future costs. There appears, however,
to be a virtual appeal in every capital
condemnation, because a stay of execu-
tion takes place until the confirmation
returns from St. Jago de Cuba, where
there is a grand tribunal established con-
sisting of five judges, before whom coun-
sellors plead as in our courts.

Crimes of great atrocity are rare.
Murder by stabbing seems to be confined
to the Spanish soldiers and sailors. The
terror of the magistrate's power restrains
assaults, batteries, riots, &c.

Punishments are generally mild. They
mostly consist of imprisonment and pay-
ment of costs, sometimes the stocks.
White men, not military, are rarely,

perhaps never degraded by whipping ; and in no case do any fines go into the public treasury. Murder, arson and aggravated robbery of the king's treasury or effects, are punished with death. Robbery of private persons to any amount is never punished with death, but by restitution, imprisonment, and sometimes enormous costs. Crimes against the king's revenue, such as contraband trade, are punished with hard labour for life, or a term of years, on board the galleys, in mines, or on the public works.

LEARNING.

There are no colleges, and but one public school, which is at New Orleans. The masters of this are paid by the king. They teach the Spanish language only. There are a few private schools for children. Not more than half of the inhabitants are supposed to be able to read and write, of whom not more than two hundred perhaps are able to do it well. In general the learning of the inhabitants does not extend beyond those two arts ; though they seem to be endowed with a good natural genius, and an uncommon facility of learning whatever they undertake.

THE CHURCH.

The clergy consists of a bishop, who does not reside in the province, and whose salary of four thousand dollars is charged on the revenue of certain bishopricks in Mexico and Cuba; two canons having each a salary of six hundred dollars; and twenty-five curates, five for the city of New-Orleans, and twenty for as many country parishes, who receive each from three hundred and sixty to four hundred and eighty dollars a year. Those salaries, except that of the bishop, together with an allowance for sacristans and chapel expences are paid by the treasury at New-Orleans, and amount annually to thirteen thousand dollars.

There is also at that place a convent of Ursulines, to which is attached about a thousand acres of land, rented out in three plantations. The nuns are now in number not more than ten or twelve, and are all French. There were formerly about the same number of Spanish ladies belonging to the order; but they retired to Havannah during the period when it was expected that the province would be transferred to France. The remaining nuns receive young ladies as boarders and in-

Append.

struct them in reading, writing, and needle-work.

They have always acted with great propriety, and are generally respected and beloved throughout the province. With the assistance of six hundred dollars from the treasury, they always support and educate twelve female orphans.

OF THE OFFICERS OF THE GOVERNMENT.

The officers who are merely judicial, have been already mentioned, and therefore some of them will be altogether omitted in this place. The executive officers appointed by the governor, for each division of the province, and called COMMANDANTS, are generally taken from the army, or the militia. When the settlement is small, some respectable person is appointed to the civil command, and the militia officer has the direction of military matters. Where there is a garrison, the commandant is sub-delegate of the Intendant, and draws upon him for all expenses incurred. In that case he has the charge of all matters relating to the revenue, within his district.

The duty of commandants is to superintend the police, preserve the peace of the district, examine the passports of travellers, and to suffer no strangers

g, writing, and nec-

acted with great pro-
ally respected and be-
province. With the
red dollars from the
support and educate
as.

OF THE GOVERN- MENT.

are merely judicial,
mentioned, and there-
will be altogether o-

The executive of-
y the governor, for
e province, and cal-
are generally taken
the militia. When

all, some respectable
d to the civil com-
itia officer has the di-
y matters. Where

the commandant is
intendant, and draws
penses incurred. In
charge of all matters
e, within his district.
ommandants is to su-
e, preserve the peace
amine the passports
o suffer no strangers

(lxxxvii)

to settle within the limits of their com-
mand, without regular leave obtained
from government. They are to prevent
smuggling, to certify that all lands, pe-
titioned for by the inhabitants, are vacant
before they are granted, and when re-
quired, put the owner in possession.—
They are besides notaries public, and in
their offices it is necessary to register all
sales of lands and slaves, and even to
make the contracts for those purposes,
before them. They act as sheriffs, levy
executions on property, attend and cer-
tify the sale, and collect the proceeds.—
They also take inventories of the prop-
erty of intestates. By an ordinance of Ba-
sen Carondelet, Syndics are established
every three leagues, who are subordinate
to the commandant, decide small causes,
and have the police of roads, levies,
travellers and negroes.

The officers of the general govern-
ment are the following: Beside his judi-
cial powers, the Governor is chief of the
army and militia, and the head of the ci-
vil government. He is also President of
the Cabildo, or Provincial Council. He
appoints and removes at pleasure the
commandants of districts. He appoints
the officers of the militia, who are never-

thelefs commissioned by the king, and he recommends military officers for preferment. He is superintendant of Indian affairs. He promulgates ordinances for the good government and improvement of the province; but he has no power to assess taxes upon the inhabitants without their consent. Until the year 1798, he possessed the sole power of granting lands, but it then passed into the hands of the Intendant.

The Cabildo is an hereditary council of twelve, chosen originally from the most wealthy and respectable families.—The governor presides over their meetings. Their office is very honorable, but it is acquired by purchase. They have a right to represent, and even to remonstrate to the governor, in respect to the interior government of the Province. The police of the city is under their controul and direction. In it they regulate the admission of physicians and surgeons to practice. Two members of the Cabildo serve by turn monthly, and take upon themselves the immediate superintendence of markets, bakers, streets, bridges, and the general police of the city. This council distributes among its members several important offices, such

xxxviii)

ned by the king; and he
ary officers for prefer-
perintendant of Indian
mulgates ordinances for
ment and improvement
; but he has no power
on the inhabitants with-
t. Until the year 1798,
sole power of granting
en passed into the hands
t.

is an hereditary council
osen originally from the
nd respectable families.—
presides over their meet-
office is very honorable, but
by purchase. They have
esent, and even to remon-
governor, in respect to the
nment of the Province.
the city is under their con-
ction. In it they regulate
of physicians and surgeons
Two members of the Ca-
oy turn monthly, and take
ves the immediate superin-
markets, bakers, streets,
the general police of the
council distributes among its
eral important offices, such

(lxxxix)

as Alguazil Mayor, or High Sheriff,
Alcalde Provincial, Procureur General,
&c. The last mentioned is a very im-
portant charge. The person who holds
it is not merely the king's attorney, but
an officer peculiar to the civil law. He
does not always prosecute; but after
conviction he indicates the punishment
by law to the crime, and which may be,
and is mitigated by the court. Like the
chancellor in the English system, he is the
curator and protector of orphans, &c. and
finally, he is the expounder of the law,
the defender of the privileges belonging
to the town, province or colony, and
the accuser of every public officer that
infringes them.

The Cabildo is also vested with a spe-
cies of judicial authority, for which, and
for a further elucidation of its constitu-
tion, and the functions of the officers
springing from it, see the Appendix No.
I.

The Intendant is chief of the depart-
ments of finance and commerce, and ex-
ercises the judicial powers already men-
tioned. He is entirely independent of
the governor, and no public monies can
be issued without his express order. The
land office is under his direction.

(xc)

The Contador, Treasurer and Interventor, are officers subordinate to the Intendant. The first has four clerks under him, and keeps all accounts and documents respecting the receipt and expenditure of the revenue, and is therefore a check upon the Intendant. The treasurer is properly no more than a cashier, and is allowed one clerk. The Interventor superintends all public purchases, and bargains. The Administrator is also subordinate to the Intendant, and with a number of inferior officers, manages every thing respecting the custom house. Every clerk in these offices receives his commission from the king.

The Auditor is the king's counsel, who is to furnish the governor with legal advice in all cases of judicial proceedings, whether civil or military.

The Assessor's functions are similar to those of the Auditor, and are properly applicable to the Intendant's department.

Both of the officers last mentioned are also the counsellors of some of the other tribunals, as before intimated.

A Secretary of the government and another of the Intendency.

A Surveyor General.

A Harbour Master.

Treasurer and Inter-
subordinate to the In-
tendant has four clerks un-
der his accounts and do-
ing the receipt and ex-
penditure of revenue, and is there-
fore subordinate to the Intendant. The
Intendant has no more than a
few clerks. The Intendant
directs all public pur-
chases. The Administrator
is subordinate to the Intendant.
The Intendant has a number
of inferior officers,
and respecting the cus-
toms clerk in these offices
receives his commission from the king.
The king's counsel, who
is subordinate to the governor with legal ad-
vice in judicial proceedings,
receives his commission from the king.
The functions are similar to
those of the Intendant, and are properly
in the Intendant's department.
The officers last mentioned are
of some of the other
provinces are intimated.
The functions of the government and
the Intendant's
Intendant.
Intendant.

A Store Keeper, who takes charge of
all public moveable property.

An Interpreter of the French and
Spanish languages, and a number of
other inferior officers.

All appointments in the province with
a salary of more than thirty dollars per
month are made by the king, and most
of those with a lower salary by the go-
vernor or Intendant as belongs to their
respective departments. There are no
officers chosen by the people.

The salaries and perquisites of the prin-
cipal officers are as follows :

Governor annually,	6,000 p.	salary 2,000 p. per
Intendant,	4,000	none
Auditor,	2,000	2,000
Comptroller,	2,000	none
Assessor,	1,200	1,000
Treasurer,	1,200	none.
Administrator,	1,200	none.
Secretary of government,	600	2,000

The commandants of districts receive
each 100 dollars from the king annually,
unless they are possessed of a military
employment or pension.

TAXES AND DUTIES..

Instead of paying local taxes, each in-
habitant is bound to make and repair
roads, bridges, and embankments through
his own land.

A duty of six per cent. is payable at the custom house, on the transfer of shipping. It is ascertained upon the sum, the buyer and seller declare to be the real consideration. As no oath is required from either, they seldom report more than half the price.

The following taxes are also payable in the Province.

Two per cent. on legacies and inheritances, coming from collaterals and exceeding 2,000 dollars.

Four per cent. on legacies, given to persons who are not relatives of the testator.

A tax on civil employments, the salaries of which exceed 300 dollars annually, called *media anuata* amounting to half of the first year's salary. By certain officers, it is to be paid in two annual instalments, and by others in four. The first person appointed to a newly created office pays nothing, but the tax is levied on all who succeed him.

Seven dollars is deducted from the sum of 20 paid as pilotage by every vessel entering or leaving the Mississippi; but the treasury provides the boats, and pays the salary of the pilots and sailors employed at the Balize. The remainder

(xcii)

er cent. is payable at
on the transfer of
certained upon the
d seller declare to be
on. As no oath is re-
r, they seldom report
price.

axes are also payable

on legacies and inheri-
om collaterals and ex-
ars.

on legacies, given to
ot relatives of the tes-

employments, the fa-
ceed 300 dollars annu-
anata amounting to

year's salary. By cer-
to be paid in two annu-
d by others in four.
appointed to a newly
s nothing, but the tax
o succeed him.

is deducted from the
s pilotage by every ves-
leaving the Mississippi;
provides the boats, and
the pilots and sailors
balize. The remainder

(xciii)

of the 20 dollars is thus distributed —
To the head pilot 4—to the pilot who is in
the vessel 4, and 5 to the crew of the
row boat, that goes out to put the pilot
on board, or take him ashore.

A tax of 40 dollars per annum for li-
cences to sell liquors.

A tax on certain places when sold,
such as those of Regidor, Notary, At-
torney, &c.

But the principal tax is that of 6 per
cent. levied on all imports and exports,
according to a low Tarif. The proceeds
of which nett about 120,000 dollars,
whilst all the other taxes are said not to
yield more than 5 or 6 thousand dollars
annually.

EXPENSES AND DEBT.

The expenses of the present govern-
ment, comprehending the pay and sup-
port of the regiment of Louisiana, part of
a battalion of the regiment of Mexico, a
company of dragoons, and one of artil-
lery, which form the garrison of the
country, including Mobile; repairs of
public buildings and fortifications; the
maintenance of a few galleys to convey
troops and stores throughout the pro-
vince; Indian presents and salaries of
officers, clergy, and persons employed

(xciv)

for public purposes, amount to about \$50,000 dollars. A sum in specie, which does not generally exceed 400,000 dollars, is annually sent from Vera Cruz; but this, together with the amount of duties and taxes collected in the province, leaves usually a deficiency of one hundred or one hundred and fifty thousand dollars, for which certificates are issued to the persons who may have furnished supplies, or to officers and workmen for their salaries. Hence a debt has accumulated, which, it is said, amounts at present to about 450,000 dollars. It bears no interest, and is now depreciated 90 per cent. The latter circumstance has taken place not from want of confidence in the eventual payment of the certificates; but from the uncertainty of the time when, and the general want and value of specie. The whole of this debt is said to be due to the inhabitants, and to American residents. It would have been long since paid off, but for a diversion of the funds, destined for that purpose, to different and external objects.

IMPORTS AND EXPORTS.

The productions of Louisiana are—sugar, cotton, indigo, rice, furs and peltry, lumber, tar, pitch, lead, flour,

ceiv)

es, amount to about
sum in specie, which
exceed 400,000 dol-
lar from Vera Cruz ;
with the amount of
lected in the province,
iciency of one hun-
dred and fifty thousand
certificates are issued
may have furnished
ers and workmen for
ce a debt has accu-
is said, amounts at
350,000 dollars. It
is now depreciated
latter circumstance
from want of confi-
dential payment of the
in the uncertainty of
the general want and
whole of this debt is
inhabitants, and to
It would have been
but for a diversion of
for that purpose, to
al objects.

D EXPORTS.

f Louisiana are—su-
rice, furs and pel-
pitch, lead, flour,

(xcv)

horses and cattle. Population alone is
wanting to multiply them to an astonish-
ing degree. The soil is fertile, the cli-
mate salubrious, and the means of com-
munication between most parts of the
province certain, and by water.

The following has been received
as a sketch of the present exports of
Louisiana, viz,

Dollars.

20,000 bales of cotton, of 2 cwt each, at 20 cents per lb.	}	1,344,000 increasing.
45,000 casks of sugar, 10 cwt. each, at 6 cents per lb.		
800 do. molasses, 100 gallons each.	}	32,000 ditto.
Indigo,		
Poultry,	}	diminishing rapidly
Lumber,		
Lead, corn, horses and cattle, uncer- tain,		
All other articles, sup- pose		100,000
		2,158,000

According to official returns in the
Treasury of the United States, there
were imported into our territory from

(xvi)

Louisiana and the Floridas, merchandize to the following amounts, in the several years prefixed :

	<i>Dollars.</i>
In 1799 to the value of	507,132
1800 - - -	904,322
1801 - - -	956,635
1802 - - -	1,008,214

According to the same authority, which makes the total of the exports to amount to 2,158,000 dollars, the imports, in merchandize, plantation-utensils, slaves, &c. amount to two and an half millions, the difference being made up by the money introduced by the government, to pay the expenses of governing and protecting the colony.

According to the returns in the Treasury of the United States, exports have been made to Louisiana and the Floridas, to the following amount in the years prefixed :

In 1799 to the value of
 3,056,268 in foreign articles.
 447,824 in domestic do.

Dollars 3,504,092

In 1800 - { 1,795,127 in foreign articles.
 240,662 in domestic do.

vi)

Floridas, merchan-
ding amounts, in the
d :

Dollars.

507,132
904,322
956,635
1,006,214

same authority, which
the exports to amount
ars, the imports, in
ration-utensils, slaves,
and an half millions,
y made up by the mo-
the government, to
of governing and pro-

e returns in the Treas-
d States, exports have
siana and the Floridas,
mount in the years pre-

e value of
268 in foreign articles.
824 in domestic do.

4,092

795,127 in foreign articles.
240,662 in domestic do.

(xcvi.)

In 1801 - { 1,770,794 in foreign articles.
137,204 in domestic do.

Dollars 1,907,998

In 1802 - { 1,054,660 in foreign articles.
170,110 in domestic do.

Dollars 1,224

It is to be observed that the total of
the imports and exports of these provinces (of which the Flori-
das are but a very unimportant part, with
respect to both) be as above supposed
viz.

Imports,	- -	2,500,000 dollars
Exports,	- -	2,138,000
Making together		4,638,000

Dollars 2,635,789

The duty of six per cent, ought alone
to produce the gross sum of two hundred
seventy-nine thousand four hundred and
eighty dollars, and that the difference
between that sum and its actual nett
produce, arises partly from the imperfect
tariff by which the value of merchandize
is ascertained, but principally from the

Appen.

B

smuggling, which is openly countenanced by most of the revenue officers.

MANUFACTURES.

There are but few domestic manufactures. The Acadians manufacture a little cotton into quilts and cottonades; and in the remote parts of the province, the poorer planters spin and weave some negro cloths of cotton and wool mixed. There is one machine for spinning cotton in the parish of Iberville, and another in the Opelousas; but they do little or nothing. In the city, besides the trades which are absolutely necessary, there is a considerable manufacture of cordage, and some small ones of shot and hair-powder. There are likewise in, and within a few leagues of the town, twelve distilleries for making tafia, which are said to distil annually a very considerable quantity; and one sugar refinery, said to make about 200,000 lbs. of loaf sugar.

NAVIGATION EMPLOYED IN THE TRADE
OF THE PROVINCE.

In the year 1802 there entered the Mississippi two hundred and sixty eight vessels of all descriptions, eighteen of which were public armed vessels, and the remainder merchantmen, as follows, viz.

openly countenance
revenue officers.

URES.

domestic manufac-
manufacture a lit-
nd cottonades; and
f the province, the
nd weave some ne-
and wool mixed.
for spinning cotton
lle, and another in
ey do little or noth-
les the trades which
ry, there is a con-
re of cordage, and
ot and hair-powder.
, and within a few
, twelve distilleries
hich are said to dis-
onsiderable quantity;
ry, said to make a-
f loaf sugar.

YED IN THE TRADE
ROVINCE.

02 there entered the
dred and sixty eight
riptions, eighteen of
armed vessels, and the
tmen, as follows, viz.



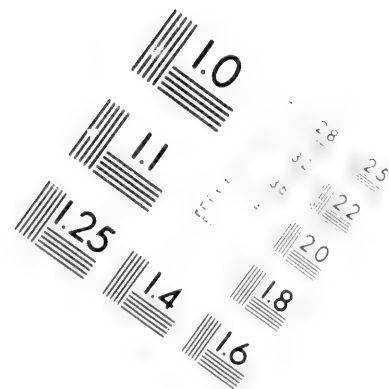
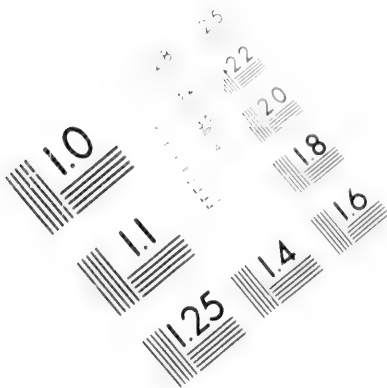
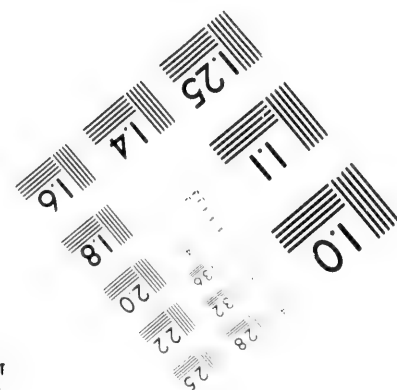
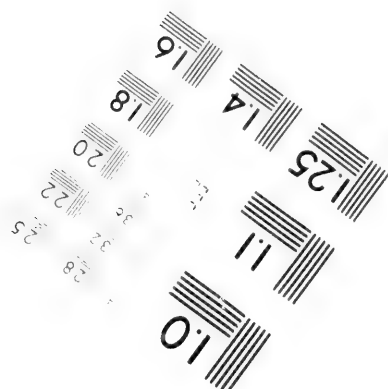
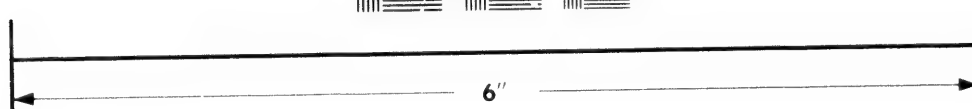
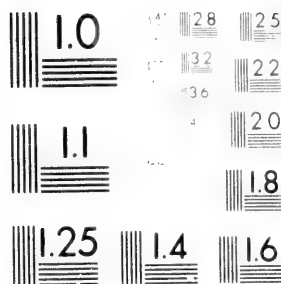


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1984

tv
n
in
o
e
o
e
3
M
f
S
I
S
S
I

(xcix)

	<i>American.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Trans.</i>
Ships,	44	14	
Brigs,	63	17	1
Polacres,	-	4	
Schooners,	50	61	
Sloops,	9	1	
Total	170	97	1

Of the number of American vessels, twenty-three ships, twenty-five brigs, nineteen schooners, and five sloops came in ballast, the remainder were wholly, or in part laden.

Five Spanish ships and seven schooners came in ballast. The united tonnage of all the shipping that entered the river, exclusive of the public armed vessels, was 33,725 register tons.

In the same year there sailed from the Mississippi two hundred and sixty-five sail, viz.

<i>American.</i>		<i>Tons.</i>
Ships, 40	{ of which 1 } { in ballast. }	8,972
Brigs, 58		7,546
Sch'rs, 52		4,346
Sloops, 8		519
Polacres, -		-
158	Total	21,383

(c)

<i>Spanish.</i>		<i>Tons.</i>
Ships, 18		3,714
Brigs, 22	1 in ballast	1,944
Sch'rs, 58		3,747
Sloops, 9	1 in ballast	108
Polacres, 9	1 in ballast	240
104	Total	9,756
<i>French.</i>		<i>Tons.</i>
Schooners, 3		105
<i>Total.</i>		<i>Tons.</i>
Americans 158		21,889
Spanish 104		9,753
French 3		105
<i>Grandtotal, 265 sail, tons</i>		<i>31,241</i>

The tonnage of the vessels which went away in ballast, and that of the public armed ships, are not included in the foregoing account. — These latter carried away masts, yards, spars, pitch, tar, &c. at least 1,000 tons.

In the first six months of the present year, there entered the Mississippi 173 sail, of all nations, four of which were

(ci)

Public armed vessels' viz. two French and two Spanish, whose tonnage is not enumerated.

	<i>American.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>
Ships,	23	5 896
Brigs,	44	5,701
Polacres,		
Schooners	22	1,899
Sloops,	4	278

Total, 93 13,264

	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>
Ships,	14	3,080
Brigs,	20	2,173
Polacres,	3	480
Schooners	18	1, 87
Sloops,	3	167

Total, 58 7,087

	<i>French.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>
Ships,	5	1,002
Brigs,	8	878
Polacres,	2	486
Schooners,	7	488
Sloops,		

Total, 22 2,804

Tons.
3,714
1,944
3,747
108
240
9,758

Tons.
105
Tons.
21,889
9,753
105

ons 31,241

vessels which went
at of the public
luded in the fore-
atter carried away
atch, tar, &c. at

ths of the present
e Mississippi 173
r of which were

(cii)

<i>Total of Ships.</i>		<i>Total of Tons.</i>
American,	93	13,264
Spanish,	58	7,087
French,	22	2,804
Grand Total, 173		23,155 Tons.

In the same six months there sailed from the Mississippi one hundred and fifty-six vessels, viz.

	<i>American.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>French.</i>
Ships,	21	18	2
Brigs,	28	31	1
Polacres,	-	4	-
Sch'rs,	17	26	5
Sloops,	2	1	-
	68	80	8

COASTING TRADE.

There is a considerable coasting trade from Pensacola, Mobile, and the Creeks and Rivers falling into and in the neighbourhood of Lake Pontchartrain, from whence New-Orleans is principally supplied with ship timber, charcoal, lime, pitch, and tar, and partly with cattle, and the places before named are supplied with articles of foreign growth and produce in the same way from Orleans. The ves-

Total of Tons.

13,264
7,087
2,804

23,155 Tons.

months there sailed
e hundred and fif-

<i>nish.</i>	<i>French.</i>
3	2
1	1
4	-
5	5
	-
	8

TRADE.

coasting trade from
and the Creeks and
in the neighbour-
rain, from whence
ally supplied with
lime, pitch, and
ttle, and the pla-
supplied with arti-
a and produce in
rleans. The ves-

fels employed are sloops and schooners, some of which are but half decked. from eight to fifty tons; five hundred of which, including their repeated voyages, and 13 gallies and gun boats entered the Bayou St. Jean last year. There is likewise a small coasting trade between the Atacapas and Opelousas, and New-Orleans by way of the Balize, which would much increase, if there was any encouragement given by government, to clear away a few obstructions chiefly caused by fallen timber, in the small rivers and creeks leading to them.

❖ ————— ❖
PROCLAMATION.
In the name of the French republic.
PIERRE CLEMENT LAUSSAT,
Colonial prefect and commissioner of the French
government —
To the people of LOUISIANA.

People of Louisiana—

The mission which has made me traverse the ocean for two thousand five hundred leagues and placed me in the midst of you, this mission, on which I have for so long a time built so many high hopes and so many wishes for your happiness, is now changed : that mission of which I am at this moment the minister and executor is less pleasing though equally flattering to me ; inasmuch as it supplies me with a consolation derived from the belief that it will be generally more advantageous to you.

In virtue of their powers and authority the commissioners of his catholic majesty have surrendered to me this country, and you every where see the unfurled standard of the French republic, and hear the repeated roar of her cannon, announcing to you that on this day she resigns her

dominion over those regions. People of Louisiana, this event will immediately take place; for I am on the eve of transmitting this country to the commissioners of the United States, who are charged to take possession of it in the name of their government; their arrival I momentarily expect.

The approaches of a war, which commenced under such bloody and terrible auspices and which menaced the four quarters of the globe, induced the French government to turn its attention and its care to these regions. Motives of prudence and humanity, uniting with a more enlarged and solid policy, motives in a word, worthy of the genius of that power which balances the great destinies of nations, have given a new direction to the beneficent intentions of France, and have determined her to cede Louisiana to the United States of America.

You, thus become, people of Louisiana, the interesting pledge of a friendship between two republics, which cannot fail of increasing, and becoming every day more sure and more strong; a pledge which will powerfully contribute to their common repose and their common prosperity.

The third article of the treaty will not escape your notice. It is there said: "The inhabitants of the ceded territory shall be incorporated in the union of the United States, and admitted as soon as possible, according to the principles of the federal constitution, to the enjoyment of all the rights, advantages and immunities of citizens of the United States; and in the mean time they shall be maintained and protected in the free enjoyment of their liberty, property, and the religion which they possess."

Thus you behold yourselves, people of Louisiana, suddenly invested with a right to the privileges of a free constitution and government, raised by power, cemented by treaties, and tested by a long experience.

You are about to make a part of an already numerous and powerful people, renowned for their enterprize, their industry, their patriotism, their knowledge; and who, in their rapid career, promise soon to arrive at the highest and most brilliant rank, ever reached by any nation upon the face of the globe. Its position is at the same time so fortunate, as to prevent its splendor and success from lessening its happiness.

However benevolent may be the views of the mother country, (of which you are not ignorant) the immense distance of such a colony, is a rampart which covers oppressions, exaction and abuse ; and the facility and certainty of concealment which it affords often corrupts the man who in other circumstances would have looked with detestation on injustice. From this moment you cease to be exposed to this fatal evil.

From the nature of the government of the United States, whose privileges you are immediately to enjoy, you will have even under a provisional arrangement, popular governors, subject to your censure and recall, and to whom your permanent esteem, your suffrages and affection will be always necessary.

The public interests and affairs, far from being interdicted to you, will now be your own interest and your own business, upon which your wise and impartial opinions will be sure at length of obtaining a preponderating influence ; and to which even you cannot remain indifferent without self-condemnation.

The epoch will soon arrive, in which you will chuse for yourselves a form of government ; which while it will be con-

formable to the sacred principles of the social compact of the federal union, will be adapted to **your** manners, to **your** necessities, to **your** climate, to **your** customs, soil and local circumstances.

But especially, you will soon be sensible of the precious advantages of an upright, incorruptible and impartial administration of justice; whose forms of procedure are invariable. Where limits are carefully applied to the arbitrary application of laws, according to the natural and moral character of judges and juries, so as most efficaciously to insure to the citizens their safety and their property: for this is one of the singular attributes peculiar to the government under which you are to live.

Its principles, its legislation, its conduct, its care, its vigilance in regard to the interests of agriculture and commerce, and the progress made in both, are well known to you, even from the advantages which you have yourselves, people of Louisiana, drawn from them.

There never has been, nor ever can be a metropolis without a colonial monopoly, more or less exclusive; on the contrary on the part of the United States, you have a right to expect a liberty of exportation without limits and that the privileges of importation will accord with

ered principles of the
the federal union, will
manners, to your ne-
climate, to your cus-
al circumstances.

you will soon be sensi-
advantages of an up-
e and impartial admi-
ice; whose forms of
riable. Where limits
ed to the arbitrary ap-
according to the na-
aracter of judges and
efficaciously to insure
r safety and their pro-
one of the singular at-
to the government un-
to live.

its legislation, its con-
vigilance in regard to
agriculture and com-
progress made in both,
you, even from the
you have yourselves,
a, drawn from them.
s been, nor ever can
without a colonial mono-
exclusive; on the con-
of the United States,
to expect a liberty of
ut limits and that the
rtation will accord with

(cix)

your public wants, and internal industry
From a happy concurrence, you will be
able to buy cheaply and sell at high rates,
and will besides reap immense advantages
from a place of deposit. The Mississip-
pi, the Nile of America, bordering not on
deserts of burning sands, but plains more
fertile and extensive than any known in
the new world, will, at the quays of this
new Alexandria, be covered with thou-
sands of vessels from all nations. Among
these vessels, I trust, people of Louisiana,
you will always distinguish with com-
plaisance the French flag, and its sight
will never cease to gladden your hearts.
Such is our firm hope; I formally avow
it in the name of my country, and its go-
vernment.

Bonaparte, in stipulating by the VII
article of the treaty, that the French
shall be admitted during 12 years to carry
on commerce with your shores on the
same conditions, and without paying
other duties than the citizens of the
United States, has wished to renew and
perpetuate the ties which unite the
French of Louisiana, and the Frenchmen
of Europe; new strength will be given
to the relations already subsisting between
these inhabitants of the two continents;

(cx)

the more satisfactory and durable, as it will be founded upon a constant reciprocity of friendly sentiments and services. Your children will be our children, and our children will become yours. Amidst you they will improve in knowledge and in talents, while at the same time they will increase your strength, your instruments of labor and your industry, and will reap with you the gifts of unsparring nature.

I have pleased myself, people of Louisiana, with drawing at length this pleasing picture, and of opposing it to the reproaches of abandonment, and the tender regrets uttered by many among you, who are attached to the country of their ancestors. France and its government will hear of these regrets with gratitude and affection.

But ere long, you will by your own experience, prove the justice it has shewn you by this eminent and most memorable of benefits.

The French government recognizes in this event, the first example offered in modern times, of a colony voluntarily emancipating itself, after the example of those colonies of antiquity, which we so greatly admire. In the present time,

ex)

ery and durable, as
upon a constant reci-
sentiments and ser-
ven will be our chil-
dren will become
they will improve in
talents, while at the
increase your strength,
labor and your in-
crease with you the gifts

myself, people of Loui-
siana at length this pleas-
ure of opposing it to the
dominant, and the ten-
sion by many among you,
to the country of their
and its government
regrets with gratitude

you will by your own
the justice it has shewn
and most memora-

government recognizes in
this example offered in
a colony voluntarily
of, after the example of
antiquity, which we so
in the present time,

(cxi)

and in times to come, may an inhabit-
ant of Louisiana, and a Frenchman,
never meet upon any spot of the globe,
without feeling as brothers. May this
title, for the future, be the only one
which will truly describe their eternal en-
gagements, and liberal independence!

At New Orleans, the 8th Frimaire,
year 12 of the French Republic—
(November 30, 1803.)

(Signed) LAUSSAT.

By the Colonial Prefect, Commissioner
of the French government.

(Signed) DANGOROT.

Secretary to the Commission.

NEW-ORLEANS, Dec. 14.

In consequence of dispatches received
by the Colonial Prefect and Commissary
of the French government, Citizen
Laussat, on the evening of the 25th ult.,
a conference took place on Monday fol-
lowing, between the Prefect on the
part of the French Republic, and his
Excellency Governor Salcedo and the
Marquis de Casa Calvo, Brigadiers in
the army of Spain and Commissaries of
the Spanish Government, on the part

of his Catholic Majesty, at which it was agreed that on the succeeding Wednesday the province of Louisiana should be formally delivered to the French Republic. On Tuesday dispositions to that effect took place. Early on Wednesday the Spanish colours were displayed from a lofty flag staff erected for that purpose in front of the town house, where at eleven o'clock the Spanish troops were paraded, having a company of Mexican dragoons on their right, and the Militia of New-Orleans on their left. The Commissaries of the Spanish Government proceeded to the town house at 12; and shortly after the Colonial Prefect repaired to the same place. The public square, the streets, the balconies and even the house tops were crowded with spectators anxious to witness a scene so interesting to the inhabitants. The prefect presented to the Commissaries of Spain an order of His Catholic Majesty dated October 15, 1802, for the delivery of the Colony, and likewise his credentials or powers from the First Consul to receive the same, bearing date the 6th of June 1803. These papers being read—the keys of the town were delivered by the Governor to the

left, at which it was
succeeding Wednes-
day Louisiana should be
to the French Re-
day dispositions to
place. Early on Wed-
n colours were dis-
y flag staff erected for
t of the town house,
o'clock the Spanish
d, having a company
as on their right, and
Orleans on their left.
of the Spanish Go-
to the town house at
r the Colonial Pre-
e same place. The
streets, the balconies
tops were crowded
xious to witness a
g to the inhabitants,
ed to the Commissa-
ter of His Catholic
tober 15, 1802, for
Colony, and likewise
owers from the First
the same, bearing
e 1803. These pa-
e keys of the town
the Governor to the

Prefect ; and the Marquis de Casa Cal-
vo pronounced the oath of allegiance of
the people of Louisiana to His Catholic
Majesty to be absolved. The record
of these proceedings being read, a signal
was fired for the descent of the Spanish
flag, which was directly followed by
another for unfurling that of France.
The Spanish troops withdrew ; the Pre-
fect announced to the militia, in a brief
address, the change of government—
and gave them a commander. It gave us
great pleasure to be able to state that the
utmost harmony and good intelligence
has presided over the two nations. The
punctuality and good faith which have
been observed on this occasion by the
Spanish Commissaries, and the magna-
nimity of their behaviour must command
the esteem and win the confidence of
all nations. The Prefect having assum-
ed the reins of government, commenced
and completed the arduous and impor-
tant duties of organizing the civil and
military departments of the colonial go-
vernment with a celerity which experi-
ence only could have enabled him to per-
form : the wisdom of his measures may
be attested by the harmony and order
that prevails among the vast variety of

the inhabitants of this country. On Thursday a dinner was given by the Prefect to seventy two French, Spanish and American gentlemen, in celebration of the preceding events. After dinner the following toasts were drank :

The French Republic, and Bonaparte.

To Spain, and Charles IV.

To the United States and Thomas Jefferson.

For each toast a treble salute of 21 guns each.

The dinner was succeeded by a splendid illumination, concert, ball, &c. The assemblage of nearly one hundred ladies at the ball was truly beautiful, brilliant and interesting. On the evening of the 8th inst. a fete perhaps more magnificent than that of the Prefect and more numerously attended was given by the Marquis de Casa Calvo, in compliment to the Commissary of the French Government and celebration of the happy fulfilment of their respective commissions.

The American citizens here have formed themselves into a corps of volunteers, offered their services to the Prefect, and been received as auxiliaries to the militia of the town, in which ca-

of this country. On
r was given by the
two French, Spanish
tlemen, in celebration
events. After dinner
s were drank :

ublic, and Bonaparte.
Charles IV.

States and Thomas

a treble salute of 21

succeeded by a splen-
concert, ball, &c.
nearly one hundred
was truly beautiful,
esting. On the even-
t, a fete perhaps more
nat of the Prefect and
attended was given
Casa Calvo, in com-
missary of the French
celebration of the hap-
their respective com-

citizens here have
into a corps of vo-
their services to the
received as auxiliaries
the town, in which ca-

capacity, under the command of Daniel
Clark, Esq. they perform regular duty,
patiently waiting the arrival of the Ame-
rican troops, who are shortly expected
here in company with General Wilkin-
son, Commander of the American
troops, and His Excellency William C.
C. Claiborne, Governor of the Mississippi
Territory, who have been appointed by
the President of the United States, Com-
missioners to receive the Government of
Louisiana.

An account of the taking possession of
Louisiana in the name of the United
States of America, and of the entrance
of the American troops in N. Orleans,
under the command of Gen. Wilkin-
son.

NEW-ORLEANS, December 20, 1805.

At seven o'clock in the morning, citi-
zen L'Aussat, Colonial prefect, and Com-
missary of the French government, orde-
ed, by the beating of the drum, that the
militia should assemble at nine o'clock,
upon the military square, in order to re-
ceive there the American troops, that
were then encamped within half a league
from the city. This body, dressed in a
fine uniform, were under arms in a mo-

ment. At 9 o'clock the officers of the staff, of both nations, had conferences together, as customary on these solemn ceremonies. At 20 minutes after eleven, the report of a gun fired in the American camp, announced that the troops were ready to march. At thirty minutes past eleven, another firing of a cannon gave the signal of departure, which took place in good order. The troops in battle array, formed themselves into a column and marched at the usual pace to the sound of martial music, of a band of twelve musicians, playing the tune known under the name of *Marche des Carabiniers*, and came out of their camp. Having arrived on the road that leads to the city, a band of ten drummers and fifers played the favorite tunes of the *Moderés*; *Peuple Français, peuple de frères*, which were re-echoed by the music. This column was preceded by fourteen dragoons well mounted and dressed in a very handsome red uniform. Four pieces of artillery attended by 40 gunners, preceded the first company of infantry, on whose blue colours was this motto: *E pluribus unum*. Another company of infantry, with white colours, on which was written, *The Second Regiment*, formed with

the officers of the
had conferences
in these solemn cer-
monies after eleven
in the American
the troops were
thirty minutes past
of a cannon gave
, which took place
troops in battle ar-
res into a column
usual pace to the
sic, of a band of
ing the tune known
marche des Carabini-
their camp. Hav-
id that leads to the
trumpeters and fifers
of the Moderés;
ple de freres, which
music. This column
teen dragoons well
in a very handsome
pieces of artillery
ners, preceded the
antry, on whose blue
otto: E pluribus
ontpany of infantry,
on which was writ-
iment, formed with

the first, a body of one hundred and seventy men, whose blue uniform and good order, presented a spectacle truly military. This column was followed by twenty-five riflemen in the uniform of Kentucky chasseurs. At 45 minutes past eleven, this column arrived in good order at the gate of the city, where it was received by a detachment of the militia grenadiers dressed in fine uniform, and in order of battle, to the beating of the drums. At ten minutes past twelve, the army arrived on the military square, where, by turning on the left, they faced the different bodies of militia that were ranged there in the best order. At one o'clock the American commissioners went to the municipality, a body composed of select citizens, where they were received by the Prefect in the name of the French government.

They handed him their powers, which were immediately read. Citizen Laus-
sat then in a short speech, announced the object of the meeting, and ordered the treaty of cession to the United States to be read, with the powers which the First Consul had given him. This being done, he rose and declared that from this moment he gave to the commission-

ers of the United States, possession of the province of Louisiana and its dependencies and that accordingly the sovereignty and property of it passed to the United States, under the same clauses and conditions under which it had been ceded by Spain to France.

He took the keys of the forts of New-Orleans and handed them to Mr. Clayborne, and changed seats with him.

An instrument was drawn to record what had just passed, and was immediately signed and sealed by the commissioners of both nations.

The American Commissioners were then led to the balcony of the hotel. At their appearance the flag of the French republic was lowered, and at the same time that of the United States was raised, when they met at equal height, they remained till at a signal of the firing of cannon on the square, the forts commenced a discharge, which was repeated by all the batteries, at this moment the American colours were raised and the French flag taken down.

Dis-
Fry
Tro

Infu
Seco
Wa
Cef

De
Loi

Ne

De
Wa

La

Sil

Br

La

Sl

La

Ma

La

Handwritten text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page. The text is mostly illegible due to fading and bleed-through.

PART I. POLITICAL HISTORY.

<i>Discovery and Settlement,</i>	Page	1
<i>First war with the Natchez.</i>		21
<i>Travels to the Missouris, Canrais and</i>		
<i>Pandoucas.</i>		23
<i>Insurrection of Negroes.</i>		38
<i>Second war with the Natchez.</i>		40
<i>War with the Chickasaws.</i>		75
<i>Cession of Louisiana to Spain.</i>		81
	<i>the United States.</i>	87

PART II. TOPOGRAPHY.

<i>Description and Climate of Louisiana.</i>	98
<i>Lower Louisiana and mouth of the</i>	
<i>Mississippi.</i>	110
<i>Nature of the lands on the coast.</i>	118
<i>above the fork.</i>	130
<i>Quarry of stone · high lands to the East.</i>	132
<i>West coast ; Salt-petre.</i>	137
<i>Land on Red River, Nachitoches.</i>	141
<i>Silver Mines ; Land on Black-River.</i>	147
<i>Brook of salt water ; salt lakes.</i>	150
<i>Land on the Arkansas ; red marble.</i>	152
<i>Slate ; plaster ; sand banks.</i>	153
<i>Lands on the river St. Francis.</i>	158
<i>Mines of Maramy, Lead, &c.</i>	160
<i>Lands on Missouri, Wabache, Illi-</i>	
<i>nois.</i>	165

New-Orleans, Baton-rouge, Fort Ba-
lize. 175

PART III. NATURAL HISTORY.

Corn and pulse.	151
Fruit trees.	198
Forest trees.	205
Shrubs and excrecences.	217
Creeping plants.	222
Quadrupeds.	229
Reptiles.	241
Birds and flying insects.	243
Fishes and shell fish.	267

APPENDIX.

Report of a Committee of Congress, Jan. 12, 1803.	i.
Treaty and Conventions for the ces- sion of Louisiana.	xxiii.
Act of Congress authorising the ta- king possession of it.	xxix
Documents laid before Congress	xxxi.
Account of the surrender to the French.	civ.
— to the United States.	cvii.

on-rouge, Fort Ba-
se. 175

TURAL HISTORY.

131
198
205
217
222
229
241
243
267

ENDIX.

ter of Congress,
9. i.

tions for the ces-
na- xxiii.

horising the ta-
f it. xxix

ore Congressi xxxi.

wrender to the
civ.

ited States. cvii.

